



Sun StorEdge™ 3000 Family Configuration Service 2.5 User's Guide

Sun Microsystems, Inc.
www.sun.com

Part No. 817-3337-18
July 2009, Revision A

Submit comments about this document at: <http://www.sun.com/hwdocs/feedback>

Copyright © 2002–2007 Dot Hill Systems Corporation and others, 2200 Faraday Avenue, Suite 100, Carlsbad, California 92008, USA.
All rights reserved.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. and Dot Hill Systems Corporation may have intellectual property rights relating to technology embodied in this product or document. In particular, and without limitation, these intellectual property rights may include one or more of the U.S. patents listed at <http://www.sun.com/patents> and one or more additional patents or pending patent applications in the U.S. and other countries.

This product or document is distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying distribution, and decompilation. No part of this product or document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Sun and its licensors, if any.

Third-party software is copyrighted and licensed from Sun suppliers.

Parts of the product may be derived from Berkeley BSD systems, licensed from the University of California. UNIX is a registered trademark in the U.S. and in other countries, exclusively licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, Sun StorEdge, AnswerBook2, docs.sun.com, Java, and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and in other countries.

Netscape is a trademark or registered trademark of Netscape Communications Corporation in the United States and other countries.

U.S. Government Rights—Commercial use. Government users are subject to the Sun Microsystems, Inc. standard license agreement and applicable provisions of the FAR and its supplements.

DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID.

Copyright © 2002–2007 Dot Hill Systems Corporation et d’autres, 2200 Faraday Avenue, Suite 100, Carlsbad, Californie 92008, Etats-Unis.
Tous droits réservés.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. et Dot Hill Systems Corporation peuvent avoir les droits de propriété intellectuels relatants à la technologie incorporée dans le produit qui est décrit dans ce document. En particulier, et sans la limitation, ces droits de propriété intellectuels peuvent inclure un ou plus des brevets américains énumérés à <http://www.sun.com/patents> et un ou les brevets plus supplémentaires ou les applications de brevet en attente dans les Etats-Unis et dans les autres pays.

Ce produit ou document est protégé par un copyright et distribué avec des licences qui en restreignent l’utilisation, la copie, la distribution, et la décompilation. Aucune partie de ce produit ou document ne peut être reproduite sous aucune forme, par quelque moyen que ce soit, sans l’autorisation préalable et écrite de Sun et de ses bailleurs de licence, s’il y en a.

Le logiciel détenu par des tiers, et qui comprend la technologie relative aux polices de caractères, est protégé par un copyright et licencié par des fournisseurs de Sun.

Des parties de ce produit pourront être dérivées des systèmes Berkeley BSD licenciés par l’Université de Californie. UNIX est une marque déposée aux Etats-Unis et dans d’autres pays et licenciée exclusivement par X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, le logo Sun, Sun StorEdge, AnswerBook2, docs.sun.com, Java, et Solaris sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de Sun Microsystems, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans d’autres pays.

Netscape est une marque de Netscape Communications Corporation aux Etats-Unis et dans d’autres pays.

LA DOCUMENTATION EST FOURNIE “EN L’ÉTAT” ET TOUTES AUTRES CONDITIONS, DECLARATIONS ET GARANTIES EXPRESSES OU TACITES SONT FORMELLEMENT EXCLUES, DANS LA MESURE AUTORISEE PAR LA LOI APPLICABLE, Y COMPRIS NOTAMMENT TOUTE GARANTIE IMPLICITE RELATIVE A LA QUALITE MARCHANDE, A L’APTITUDE A UNE UTILISATION PARTICULIERE OU A L’ABSENCE DE CONTREFAÇON.

Contents

Preface	xix
1. Introduction	1
2. Before You Begin	3
Installing the Software	3
Example Screens	3
Superuser Privileges	4
Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array	4
Sun StorEdge 3000 Family JBODs	4
3. Starting and Setting Up Sun StorEdge Configuration Service	5
Starting Sun StorEdge Configuration Service	6
▼ To Start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service on a UNIX Host	6
▼ To Start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service on a Microsoft Windows Host	7
The Main Window	7
The Menu, Toolbar, and Tabs	7
Menu Bar	8
Toolbar	8
Tabs	10

Device Icons	10
Physical (Hard) Drives	10
Navigating	10
If Console Locks Up During Use	11
▼ To Stop Sun StorEdge Configuration Service	11
Setup Procedures	11
▼ To Add Servers	12
▼ To Delete Servers	18
▼ To Log In and Out	19
▼ To Assign a Server to Manage a Controller	21
Changing a Server Assignment	22
▼ To Unassign the Managing Server	24
▼ To Manually Delete a Server Using the Terminal Window	24
▼ To Configure Agent Parameters	24
▼ To Enable JBOD Support	26
▼ To Verify Storage Configurations	27
▼ To Save the Logical Drive Configuration	29
Creating Host Partitions	31
▼ To Create Solaris Host Partitions	31
▼ To Create Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 Host Partitions	32
▼ To Create IBM AIX Host Logical Volumes	33
▼ To Create HP-UX Host Logical Volumes	34
What to Do Next	35
4. Full Configuration	37
Configuring Logical Drives and Logical Volumes	38
Logical Drives	38
Logical Volumes	38

Maximum Number of Supported Logical Drives, Logical Partitions, and LUN Assignments 38

▼ To Use Standard Configuration 39

Media Scan 44

▼ To Use Custom Configuration 44

The New Configuration Option 46

Before You Use New Configuration 46

▼ To Prepare for Logical Drives Larger Than 253 Gbyte 49

▼ To Create and Partition a Logical Drive Using New Configuration 49

▼ To Create and Partition a Logical Volume 57

Media Scan 59

▼ To Clear a Configuration 59

▼ To Log Out of the Configuration Level 60

Host LUN Assignments 60

▼ To Add or Change (Map) a Host LUN 61

▼ To Delete (Unmap) a Host LUN 62

Configuration File 62

▼ To Save a Configuration to a Backup File 63

Loading the Configuration 64

5. LUN Filtering (FC and SATA Only) 65

Overview 65

Assigning a LUN Filter 67

▼ To Access the LUN Filter View 67

▼ To Add a New Host Manually 67

▼ To Add an HBA Device Manually 69

▼ To Remove Standard Host Mapping 71

▼ To Assign a LUN Filter 72

▼ To Delete a LUN Filter 74

6. Monitoring the Array	75
The Main Window	76
Device Status	77
Degraded State	78
Critical State	78
Device Capacities	79
Online Help	79
Tree View of Product Configurations	79
Groups	79
The Monitoring Process	81
Auto Discovery Options	82
Viewing Detailed Device Information	83
View Group	83
View Server	84
View HBA Card	86
View Controller	87
Controllers Tab	88
Physical Drives Tab	88
Enclosure Info Tab	89
View FRU	89
View Controller Parameters	90
View Logical Drive	93
View Physical Drive	94
View Enclosure	95
Environmental State	96
Power Supply and Fan Location	98
SAF-TE and SES Temperature Sensor Locations	100
SES Voltage Sensors	101

SATA MUX and SATA Router Information	102
Battery Information	103
▼ To Verify the In-Service Date When Replacing a Battery	105
View FRU	107
Array Administration Progress	108
Agent Options Management	108
Event Log	109
Event Log File	110
▼ To Filter Events	111
▼ To Write Events to a Log File for an IBM AIX Host	111
Event Log Window	112
Severity Levels	113
Save Report	114
View Report	117
In-Band and Out-of-Band Storage Management	117
▼ To Use Out-of-Band Management	119
▼ To Remove an Array From Out-of-Band Management	122
Managing Storage Through the Web	123
Web Browser Requirements	123
UNIX OS	123
Microsoft Windows OS	124
Setting Up the Array	124
▼ To Access the Console From the Web Browser	125
7. Maintaining the Array	127
Array Administration Activities	128
▼ To Check Parity	128
▼ To Schedule a Parity Check	130
▼ To Scan Physical Disks for Bad Blocks (Media Scan)	132

- ▼ To Stop a Media Scan on a Logical Drive or Physical Drive 135
- Failed Drives 136

- ▼ To Automatically Rebuild a Drive Using a Standby Drive 136
- ▼ To Rebuild a Device Without a Standby Drive 137
- ▼ To Check the Progress of the Rebuilding Process 138
- ▼ To Manually Rebuild a Failed Drive 138
- ▼ To Restore a Logical Drive Configuration 140

Controller Maintenance Options 143

- ▼ To Reset the Controller 143
- ▼ To Shut Down the Controller 144
- ▼ To Mute the Controller Beeper 144
- ▼ To Bring a Failed Controller Back Online 145
- ▼ To Display Performance Statistics 145
- ▼ To Get Controller Boot Time 146
- ▼ To Convert a Dual Controller Array to a Single Controller Array 147

8. Updating the Configuration 149

- ▼ To Add a Logical Drive or Logical Volume From New Logical Drives 150
 - ▼ To Add a Logical Drive to a Logical Volume 153
- Media Scan 155
- ▼ To Add a Logical Volume From Existing Logical Drives 155
 - ▼ To Delete a Logical Drive or Logical Volume 157
 - The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number 158
 - ▼ To Create a Partition 160
 - The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number 162
 - ▼ To Delete a Partition 162
 - ▼ To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume 164
 - The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number 166
 - ▼ To Add Physical Drives to an Existing Logical Drive 167

The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number	168
▼ To Copy and Replace Physical Drives	168
The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number	170
▼ To Scan in New Hard Drives (SCSI only)	170
▼ To Download RAID Controller Firmware	172
▼ To Upgrade Firmware and Boot Record	175
Downloading Firmware for Devices	176
▼ To Upgrade Firmware on Hard Drives	176
▼ To Upgrade Firmware on SAF-TE/SES Devices	177
▼ To Change Controller Parameters	179
▼ To Save Changed Values	180
Channel Tab	182
RS 232 Tab	184
Cache Tab	185
Disk Array Tab	189
Drive I/F Tab	190
Host I/F Tab	192
Redundancy Tab	194
Peripheral Tab	195
▼ To View Environmental Status for the Controller	197
Network Tab	198
Protocol Tab	200
▼ To Mute the Controller Beeper	201
▼ To Assign or Change Standby Drives	202
Available Servers	204
▼ To Edit a Server Entry	204
Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host	206
▼ To Update the ODM	206

A. RAID Basics 209

RAID Terminology Overview 209

Logical Drive 210

Logical Volume 210

Local Spare Drive 210

Global Spare Drive 210

Channels 211

RAID Levels 214

RAID 0 215

RAID 1 216

RAID 1+0 217

RAID 3 218

RAID 5 219

Advanced RAID Levels 220

Local and Global Spare Drives 220

Having Both Local and Global Spares 222

B. Monitoring JBODs 223

▼ To Enable JBOD Support 223

▼ To View Component and Alarm Characteristics 225

Environmental State 225

Power Supply and Fan Location 226

SAF-TE Temperature Sensor Locations 226

▼ To Download Firmware for Devices 227

▼ To Discover a Drive 227

Solaris OS 227

Linux OS 228

Microsoft Windows OS 228

HP-UX OS 229

IBM AIX OS 229

C. Using the Cluster Configuration (SCSI Only) 233

Planning the Cluster Configuration 233

Cluster Configuration Requirements 234

▼ To Set Up Cluster Configuration 234

D. Determining Host Worldwide Names (Fibre Channel and SATA Only) 239

▼ To Determine the HBA WWN 239

Solaris OS 239

Linux and Microsoft Windows OS 240

HP-UX OS 241

IBM AIX OS 242

▼ To Determine the FC Array WWNN 243

▼ To Determine the FC Array WWPN 244

E. Email and SNMP 245

How SNMP Works 246

SNMP Trap Messages 246

Agents and Managers 247

Management Information Base (MIB) 247

SNMP Objects 247

SNMP Request Types 248

SNMP Security 248

Using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service to Send SNMP Traps 250

▼ To Send Email Messages for Each Server 250

▼ Setting Up Servers to Send Traps 253

Microsoft Windows Servers 253

▼ To Check the Community String for a Microsoft Windows Host 253

▼ To Specify the Trap Recipient for a Microsoft Windows Host 254

- ▼ To Set Up a Solaris Host 256
- ▼ To Set Up a Linux Host 256
- ▼ To Set Up an HP-UX Host 257
- ▼ To Set Up an IBM AIX Host 258

Sending SNMP Traps Without Using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service
258

F. Troubleshooting 259

G. Error Codes and Messages 267

Error Codes 268

Error and Status Messages 286

Installation and Program Prompts 300

Glossary 305

Index 313

Tables

TABLE 3-1	Main Window Toolbar Icons	9
TABLE 3-2	Main Window Tabs	10
TABLE 4-1	Maximum Number of Supported Logical and Physical Drives, Partitions, and LUN Assignments	39
TABLE 4-2	Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode	42
TABLE 4-3	Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode	53
TABLE 6-1	Device Color and Symbol Status	77
TABLE 6-2	Two-Server Group Colors	81
TABLE 6-3	Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI Array and Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI Array SAF-TE Temperature Sensor Locations	100
TABLE 6-4	Sun StorEdge 3510 FC Array and Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA Array SES Temperature Sensor Locations	101
TABLE 6-5	Event Log Location	110
TABLE 6-6	Event Record Fields	113
TABLE 6-7	Minimum Web Browser Requirements for UNIX OS	123
TABLE 6-8	Minimum Web Browser Requirements for Microsoft Windows OS	124
TABLE 8-1	Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode	152
TABLE 8-2	Change Controller Parameters That Require a Reset	180
TABLE 8-3	Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode (Kbyte)	187
TABLE A-1	RAID Level Overview	214
TABLE A-2	Advanced RAID Levels	220
TABLE B-1	Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array SAF-TE Temperature Sensor Locations	226

TABLE G-1	Severity Field	268
TABLE G-2	Major Field	268
TABLE G-3	Minor Field	269
TABLE G-4	System Drive State Errors	270
TABLE G-5	Disk State Errors	270
TABLE G-6	SAF-TE State Errors	271
TABLE G-7	Tape State Errors	271
TABLE G-8	Redundancy State Errors	273
TABLE G-9	Internal State Errors	273
TABLE G-10	Device State Errors	274
TABLE G-11	Initialization State Errors	274
TABLE G-12	Client Parameter Errors	274
TABLE G-13	Open Transport Errors	275
TABLE G-14	Close Transport Errors	275
TABLE G-15	Memory Allocation Errors	275
TABLE G-16	Transport Field Errors	276
TABLE G-17	Main Communications Errors	276
TABLE G-18	Communications Link	277
TABLE G-19	Communications Async	277
TABLE G-20	Communications Security	277
TABLE G-21	Timeout Errors	277
TABLE G-22	Administration Errors	278
TABLE G-23	Firmware Download Errors	279
TABLE G-24	System Shutdown Errors	279
TABLE G-25	Set Config Errors	280
TABLE G-26	Controller Event Errors	280
TABLE G-27	Drive Side Event Errors	281
TABLE G-28	Host Side Event Errors	282
TABLE G-29	Logical Drive Event Errors	282
TABLE G-30	Generalized Target Event Errors	283

TABLE G-31	Server Manage/Monitor Event Error	286
TABLE G-32	Substituted Values	286
TABLE G-33	Error/Status Messages	287
TABLE G-34	Installation and Program Prompts	300

Figures

FIGURE 5-1	Example of LUN Filtering	66
FIGURE 6-1	Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI Array and Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI Array Power Supply and Fan Location	99
FIGURE 6-2	Sun StorEdge 3510 FC Array and Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA Array Power Supply and Fan Location	99
FIGURE 6-3	In-Band Management	118
FIGURE 6-4	Out-of-Band Management	118
FIGURE 8-1	Copying and Replacing Physical Drives	168
FIGURE A-1	Logical Drive Including Multiple Physical Drives	210
FIGURE A-2	Allocation of Drives in Logical Drive Configurations	211
FIGURE A-3	Partitions in Logical Drive Configurations	212
FIGURE A-4	Mapping Partitions to Host ID/LUNs	213
FIGURE A-5	Mapping Partitions to LUNs Under an ID	213
FIGURE A-6	RAID 0 Configuration	215
FIGURE A-7	RAID 1 Configuration	216
FIGURE A-8	RAID 1+0 Configuration	217
FIGURE A-9	RAID 3 Configuration	218
FIGURE A-10	RAID 5 Configuration	219
FIGURE A-11	Local (Dedicated) Spare	221
FIGURE A-12	Global Spare	221
FIGURE A-13	Mixing Local and Global Spares	222

FIGURE B-1	Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array Power Supply and Fan Location	226
FIGURE E-1	Object Identifier of a MIB Variable	249

Preface

This guide explains how to use Sun StorEdge™ Configuration Service to configure, monitor, and manage the Sun StorEdge 3000 family arrays. For information about installing Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*.

This guide also references Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter, a companion utility of Sun StorEdge Configuration Service used for sending and receiving system messages from the hosts and arrays. For information about installing Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*. For information about using Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Diagnostic Reporter User's Guide*.

Unless otherwise specified, the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array, and Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array are referred to as the *array* or *arrays*.

This guide is written for experienced system administrators who are familiar with Sun hardware and software products.

How This Book Is Organized

This book covers the following topics:

[Chapter 1](#) introduces Sun StorEdge Configuration Service features.

[Chapter 2](#) lists steps to follow to ensure that the array has been configured properly before you install and use Sun StorEdge Configuration Service.

[Chapter 3](#) contains procedures for setting up Sun StorEdge Configuration Service.

[Chapter 4](#) provides instructions for configuring the array.

[Chapter 5](#) explains how to create a LUN filter to maintain large Fibre Channel networks that share common storage (FC and SATA Only).

[Chapter 6](#) explains how to monitor the array.

[Chapter 7](#) explains how to maintain the integrity of the array.

[Chapter 8](#) explains how to change or add to the current array configuration.

[Appendix A](#) provides basic redundant array of independent disks (RAID) information.

[Appendix B](#) explains how to monitor a standalone JBOD.

[Appendix C](#) provides information about setting up a cluster configuration (SCSI Only).

[Appendix D](#) explains how to determine the host worldwide name. (FC and SATA Only).

[Appendix E](#) explains how to set up full event monitoring and email notification capabilities.

[Appendix F](#) provides troubleshooting suggestions for a list of symptoms.

[Appendix G](#) contains a list of Sun StorEdge Configuration Service error codes and messages.

The [Glossary](#) provides RAID terminology and definitions used throughout the product documentation.

Using UNIX Commands

This document might not contain information on basic UNIX® commands and procedures such as shutting down the system, booting the system, and configuring devices. Refer to the following for this information:

- Software documentation that you received with your system
- Solaris™ operating system documentation, which is at <http://docs.sun.com>

Shell Prompts

Shell	Prompt
C shell	<i>machine-name%</i>
C shell superuser	<i>machine-name#</i>
Bourne shell and Korn shell	\$
Bourne shell and Korn shell superuser	#

Typographic Conventions

Typeface ¹	Meaning	Examples
AaBbCc123	The names of commands, files, and directories; on-screen computer output	Edit your <code>.login</code> file. Use <code>ls -a</code> to list all files. % You have mail.
AaBbCc123	What you type, when contrasted with on-screen computer output	% su Password:
<i>AaBbCc123</i>	Book titles, new words or terms, words to be emphasized. Replace command-line variables with real names or values.	Read Chapter 6 in the <i>User's Guide</i> . These are called <i>class</i> options. You <i>must</i> be superuser to do this. To delete a file, type <code>rm filename</code> .

1. The settings on your browser might differ from these settings.

Related Documentation

The following table contains a list of related software documentation. For a complete list of all related documentation, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.

Title	Part Number
<i>Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array Release Notes</i>	816-7955
<i>Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI Array Release Notes</i>	819-7109
<i>Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI Array Release Notes</i>	817-7660
<i>Sun StorEdge 3510 FC and 3511 SATA Array Release Notes</i>	817-6597
<i>Sun StorEdge 3000 Family 2.4 Software Installation Guide</i>	817-3764
<i>Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware 4.2 User's Guide</i>	817-3711
<i>Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Diagnostic Reporter 2.4 User's Guide</i>	817-3338
<i>Sun StorEdge 3000 Family CLI 2.4 User's Guide</i>	817-4951
<i>Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Controller Firmware Migration Guide</i>	819-6573

Accessing Sun Documentation

All Sun StorEdge 3000 family array documentation is available online at the following location:

http://www.sun.com/products-n-solutions/hardware/docs/Network_Storage_Solutions/Workgroup/

You can view, print, or purchase a broad selection of Sun documentation at:

<http://www.sun.com/documentation>

Contacting Sun Technical Support

For late-breaking news and troubleshooting tips, review the release notes for your array, available at the locations shown in “[Accessing Sun Documentation](#)” on [page xxiii](#).

If you have technical questions about this product that are not answered in the documentation, go to:

<http://www.sun.com/service/contacting>

To initiate or check on a USA-only service request, contact Sun support at:

800-USA4SUN

To obtain international technical support, contact the sales office of each country at:

<http://www.sun.com/service/contacting/sales.html>

508 Accessibility Features

The Sun StorEdge documentation is available in 508-compliant HTML files that can be used with assistive technology programs for visually impaired personnel. These files are provided on the Documentation CD for your product as well as on the websites identified in the Section “[Accessing Sun Documentation](#)” on page xxiii. Additionally, the software and firmware applications provide keyboard navigation and shortcuts, which are documented in the user's guides.

Sun Welcomes Your Comments

Sun is interested in improving its documentation and welcomes your comments and suggestions. You can submit your comments by going to:

<http://www.sun.com/hwdocs/feedback>

Please include the title and part number of your document with your feedback: *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Configuration Service 2.5 User's Guide*, part number 817-3337-18.

Introduction

This section provides a brief overview of Sun StorEdge Configuration Service features.

Note – For brevity, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service is sometimes referred to as *the program*.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service is a sophisticated program based on the Java™ programming language, which brings together storage configuration, maintenance, and monitoring tools into one application for centralized administration of the array.

From a single console located on a network, system administrators can initialize network storage, change configurations, monitor status, and schedule routine maintenance through an intuitive graphical user interface (GUI).

Administrators can also dynamically allocate, reallocate, or expand capacity as storage requirements continually change with evolving network-wide storage demands.

In the event of a change in status, the program sends alerts by console display, email, or alphanumeric pager. It can also send alerts to any Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) enterprise manager, for example HP OpenView.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service consists of two components:

- *Sun StorEdge Configuration Service agent* – Monitors attached disk storage devices and reports their status to the console about these devices. The agent software needs to be installed on each individual server in the network that is part of Sun StorEdge Configuration Service.
- *Sun StorEdge Configuration Service console* – Displays the information reported by the agents. The console also provides remote configuration and management of the devices from a single workstation. The console needs to be installed on a computer that manages the servers on your network.

You can have a maximum of 10 clients connected to the same Sun StorEdge Configuration Service agent. Clients include Sun StorEdge Configuration Service consoles and Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter daemons.

Before You Begin

This chapter contains important information you need to be aware of before you use Sun StorEdge Configuration Service. Topics covered in this chapter include:

- “Installing the Software” on page 3
- “Example Screens” on page 3
- “Superuser Privileges” on page 4
- “Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array” on page 4
- “Sun StorEdge 3000 Family JBODs” on page 4

Installing the Software

For installation instructions, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*.

Example Screens

Many example screens are provided throughout this guide to demonstrate the program. These screens might identify either the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array, or Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array in the output. Unless specifically noted that a function, and therefore its example screen, is for a specific array only, all arrays apply.

Superuser Privileges

You must be superuser (administrator) to run the Sun StorEdge Configuration Service console.

Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array

The only Sun StorEdge Configuration Service array functions supported for the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array are viewing component and alarm characteristics and determining drive failure. See [“Monitoring JBODs” on page 223](#) for procedures related to the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array.

Sun StorEdge 3000 Family JBODs

The only Sun StorEdge Configuration Service array functions supported for Sun StorEdge 3000 family JBODs are viewing component and alarm characteristics and determining drive failure. See [“Monitoring JBODs” on page 223](#) for procedures related to Sun StorEdge 3000 family JBODs.

Note – JBOD (Just a Bunch of Disks) is an array connected directly to a server with no controllers.

Starting and Setting Up Sun StorEdge Configuration Service

This chapter explains how to start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service and provides an overview of the main window, which displays attached storage devices. It also describes procedures you need to follow before you can configure and monitor an array. Topics covered in this chapter include:

- [“Starting Sun StorEdge Configuration Service” on page 6](#)
 - [“To Start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service on a UNIX Host” on page 6](#)
 - [“To Start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service on a Microsoft Windows Host” on page 7](#)
 - [“The Main Window” on page 7](#)
- [“Setup Procedures” on page 11](#)
 - [“To Add Servers” on page 12](#)
 - [“To Delete Servers” on page 18](#)
 - [“To Log In and Out” on page 19](#)
 - [“To Assign a Server to Manage a Controller” on page 21](#)
 - [“To Unassign the Managing Server” on page 24](#)
 - [“To Configure Agent Parameters” on page 24](#)
 - [“To Verify Storage Configurations” on page 27](#)
 - [“To Save the Logical Drive Configuration” on page 29](#)
 - [“To Create Solaris Host Partitions” on page 31](#)
 - [“To Create Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 Host Partitions” on page 32](#)
 - [“To Create IBM AIX Host Logical Volumes” on page 33](#)
 - [“To Create HP-UX Host Logical Volumes” on page 34](#)
- [“What to Do Next” on page 35](#)

Starting Sun StorEdge Configuration Service

This section explains how to start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service.

Note – You must be superuser (administrator) to run the console.

Because the console does not receive event alerts unless it is running, after configuring the array, always leave Sun StorEdge Configuration Service running in its *minimized* mode on the console workstation. Or, instead of keeping the console running, you can use Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter, a companion utility of Sun StorEdge Configuration Service that runs as a background service that sends messages from the hosts and array to specified email addresses. For details, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Diagnostic Reporter User's Guide*. For another method of receiving event alerts, see [“Sending SNMP Traps Without Using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service”](#) on page 258.

Note – You cannot use Sun StorEdge Configuration Service and the Sun StorEdge CLI at the same time to configure, monitor, or maintain an array.

Note – For Sun StorEdge Configuration Service to view and manage an array, each HBA card must be connected to the primary controller.

▼ To Start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service on a UNIX Host

At the command prompt, type:

```
# ssconsole
```

▼ To Start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service on a Microsoft Windows Host

For Windows 2000, choose Start → Programs → Sun StorEdge 3000 Family → Configuration Service.

For Windows 2003, choose Start → All Programs → Sun StorEdge 3000 Family → Configuration Service.

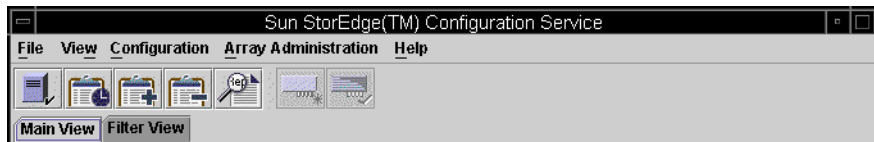
The Main Window

When the program initializes for the first time, the main window is blank. The Add Server window is displayed, prompting you to add servers to the Managed Servers list of the console you are using. For details on adding servers, see [“To Add Servers” on page 12](#).

Whenever you start the program *after* the first time and *after* you have selected Managed Servers, the main window displays server icons for the servers on the Managed Servers list.

The Menu, Toolbar, and Tabs

The main window includes a menu bar, tabs, and a toolbar for access to key functions.



Menu Bar

The following figure shows the main menu options.








File	View	Configuration	Array Administration
Server List Setup	Event Log	Standard Configure	Rebuild
Login	View Group	Custom Configure	Parity Check
Logout	View Server	Save Configuration	Schedule Parity Check
Save Report	View HBA Card*	Load Configuration	Media Scan
View Report	View Controller	Configure Host/WWN (FC and SATA only)	Controller Assignment
Exit	View Logical Drive	LUN Filter Properties (FC and SATA only)	Controller Maintenance
	View Physical Drive		Download FW for Devices
	View Enclosure		View Peripheral Device
	View FRU		
	Array Admin in Progress		
	Agent Options Management		
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display HDD under LD		
			Help
			Contents
			About sscsConsole

*Is displayed only for out-of-band management.

Toolbar

Located below the menu bar, the toolbar provides icons that give you quick access to commonly used functions. Select an icon to activate its function. Toolbar icons are displayed both as active or inactive (grayed), depending on what resources are available in the main window.

TABLE 3-1 Main Window Toolbar Icons


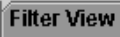
Icon	Description
	Server List Setup. Adds servers that the console manages, edits server information, or designates that an available server is managed.
	View Event Log. View events such as storage device status changes, hardware status changes, or operational notifications.
	Save Event Log. Displays the Save Event Log File dialog box, which enables you to conveniently save the Event Log without having to go to the Event Log window.
	Delete Event Log. Manually deletes the contents of the eventlog.txt file. (The program accumulates events until the limit of 10,000 is reached, at which time the Event Log is automatically reduced to the most current 500 events.)
	Save Report. Creates an XML file containing data about each of the storage components on the selected server as of the current date.
	Standard Configure. Creates one or more logical drives with one RAID level on the selected array controller. Use when you want a predefined configuration where Sun StorEdge Configuration Service automatically configures storage.
	Custom Configure. Provides multiple choices for configuring or reconfiguring logical drives or logical volumes with varying RAID levels on the selected array controller. Use when you want to manually define configuration, including setting or changing controller IDs and parameters and defining or modifying RAID sets and standby drives.

Note – The Configuration menu commands and toolbar icons might be temporarily disabled if an array administration process, such as parity checking, is running. The menu command is also deactivated when the console is refreshing its inventory on the server. A satellite dish symbol is attached to the server icon during the refresh process.

Tabs

Located below the toolbar, tabs enable you to quickly move to other Sun StorEdge Configuration Service views.

TABLE 3-2 Main Window Tabs

Tab	Description
	Click to go to the main Sun StorEdge Configuration Service window.
	Click to go to LUN Filter View. (Fibre Channel and SATA only.)

Device Icons

See [“To Verify Storage Configurations” on page 27](#) for a description of typical device icons displayed for a configured array.

Physical (Hard) Drives

As the array becomes fully configured, the main window displays multiple components. The physical drives that make up the logical drives are displayed by default; however, to make the main window more manageable to navigate, you can choose not to display the physical (hard) drives by deselecting View → Display HDD under LD.

Navigating

The program follows standard Java programming language keyboard and navigation operation.

If Console Locks Up During Use

On UNIX systems, if the console locks up during use, you can stop Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, and then close and reopen the window without affecting the agent.

▼ To Stop Sun StorEdge Configuration Service

1. At the command prompt, type:

```
# ssconsole stop
```

2. Run the program again.

The window is displayed again without affecting the agent.

Setup Procedures

This section contains the following setup procedures, which you need to follow before you can configure and monitor an array:

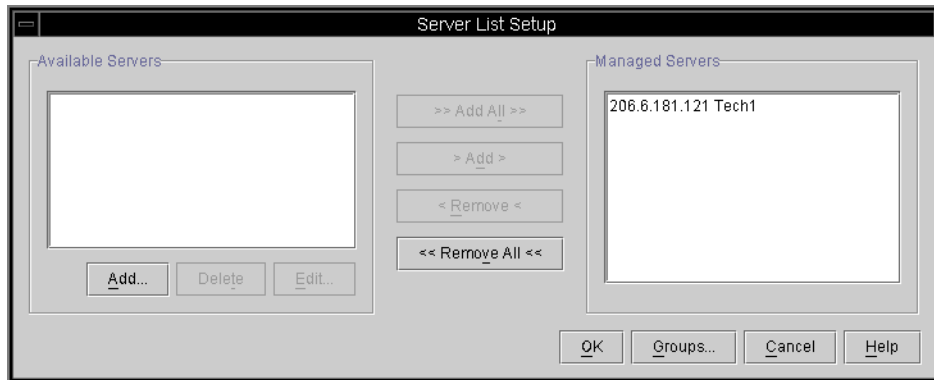
- [“To Add Servers” on page 12](#)
- [“To Delete Servers” on page 18](#)
- [“To Log In and Out” on page 19](#)
- [“To Assign a Server to Manage a Controller” on page 21](#)
- [“To Unassign the Managing Server” on page 24](#)
- [“To Configure Agent Parameters” on page 24](#)
- [“To Verify Storage Configurations” on page 27](#)
- [“To Save the Logical Drive Configuration” on page 29](#)
- [“To Create Solaris Host Partitions” on page 31](#)
- [“To Create Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 Host Partitions” on page 32](#)
- [“To Create IBM AIX Host Logical Volumes” on page 33](#)
- [“To Create HP-UX Host Logical Volumes” on page 34](#)

▼ To Add Servers

You need to assign a server to manage a controller. Before you can configure a server, you need to add it to the Managed Servers list through Server List Setup.

1. **Start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service if it is not already running.**
2. **Choose File → Server List Setup.**

The Server List Setup window is displayed.

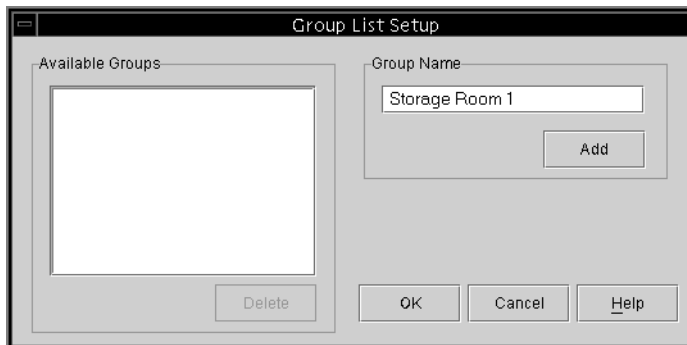


3. **(Optional) Organize the servers into groups:**

Depending on how many servers you have and where they are located, it might be helpful to organize them into groups. For example, if you have multiple servers in separate storage rooms, you might want to create groups based on location.

- a. **Click Groups in the Server List Setup window.**

The Group List Setup window is displayed. Type a name in the Group Name field and click Add.



b. To delete a group, select the group name from the Available Groups list and click Delete.

c. When you are finished adding and deleting groups, click OK.

The Server List Setup window is displayed.

4. Add a server:

a. Click Add under the Available Servers list.

The Add Server window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Server' dialog box. At the top is the title bar 'Add Server' with a close button. Below the title bar is a text field for 'Server name'. Underneath are three tabs: 'Properties', 'Mailing Lists', and 'Grouping'. The 'Properties' tab is selected and contains a 'Network Information' section with 'IP Address' and 'Socket Port' (set to 'Not assigned') text fields, and a 'Get IP Addr by Name' button. Below that is a 'Monitoring Login' section with an 'ssmon Password' text field and 'Auto discovery' radio buttons for 'Yes' (selected) and 'No'. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

b. Type the name of the server in the Server name field and press Return.

The Server name identifies the server. If this name is in your network's name server database, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service determines the server's IP address and displays it in the IP Address field.

If the program cannot find an IP address for the name, the name was either typed incorrectly or has not been recorded in the server's name database.

c. If required, type the server's TCP/IP address in the IP Address field.

Storage management can be enabled in-band using fibre channel or SCSI host connections or out-of-band through the Ethernet port. For details on using TCP/IP for out-of-band management, see [“In-Band and Out-of-Band Storage Management” on page 117](#).

If the program has not already displayed the IP address (as described in the previous step), type the IP address manually.

Selecting Get IP Address by Name, located below the IP Address field, is another method of having the program search for the IP address and display it automatically. As mentioned in the previous step, it works only if your network has a name server database and you have typed the server name as it is recorded in the database. Otherwise, you must type the IP address manually.

d. (Optional) To set up Sun StorEdge Configuration Service so that a password is not required to monitor the server, type the `ssmon` password that was assigned when Sun StorEdge Configuration Service was installed.

See [“To Log In and Out” on page 19](#) for more information on passwords.

5. Select or Deselect Automatic Discovery of servers:

a. Select No for Auto Discovery if you need a very secure environment where access even to server inventory data is restricted.

When you select No, the program does not retrieve server information when starting up. The server's icon appears color-coded white (instead of active purple) to indicate it is undiscovered. When you double-click an undiscovered server, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service prompts you for the `ssmon` user password. Optionally, you can also select the server and select File → Login.

Select Yes for Auto Discovery to retrieve all information available about this server when the console is started.

b. If you select Yes for Auto Discovery, type the same monitor password that was typed earlier when the `ssmon` user was set up on the server (or group of servers if you have a domain or a DNS tree).

Once the server(s) have been established using Auto Discovery, you do not need to type the `ssmon` password when you log in to Sun StorEdge Configuration Service; *you automatically have monitoring privileges*. However, whenever you choose a command to perform administration or configuration activities, you are prompted with a login dialog box to change your level of security by typing the password for either the `ssadmin` or `ssconfig` user that was established earlier.

c. Click OK.

6. (Optional) Set email addresses:

- a. If you want Sun StorEdge Configuration Service to send event messages using email, select the Mailing Lists tab and continue with the following directions.

You might want to type your own email address and the addresses of selected users for the purpose of receiving information about events on the server.

Note – Instead of keeping the console running in the foreground, you can use Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter, a companion utility of Sun StorEdge Configuration Service that runs as a background service that sends messages from the hosts and array to specified email addresses. For details, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Diagnostic Reporter User's Guide*. To ensure that Sun StorEdge Configuration Service receives email, see ["Email and SNMP" on page 245](#) for information on setting traps. For another method of receiving event alerts, see ["Sending SNMP Traps Without Using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service" on page 258](#). You can also use the Sun StorEdge Automated Diagnostic Environment (StorADE) application to monitor the status of your array.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Add Server" with a tabbed interface. The "Mailing Lists" tab is selected. At the top, the "Server name" field contains "Tech1". Below this are three tabs: "Properties", "Mailing Lists", and "Grouping". The "Mailing Lists" tab contains a table with two columns: "Mail Address" and "Severity". The table is currently empty. Below the table, there are two input fields: "Mail Address" with the value "test@sun.com" and "Severity" with a dropdown menu set to "Critical". At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "Add to List", "Delete from List", and "Setup Mail Server". At the very bottom are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".

- b. For each user, type an email address in the Mail Address field.

- c. In the Severity list box, scroll through the list of severity levels and choose from the following options:**

Critical – A message that requires intervention by the network administrator, such as failure of a device, power supply, or fan.

Warning – Messages that generally indicate internal program events. If you see a large number of these messages, it might mean that there is a problem with the server or the network.

Informational – Messages about the devices on the server that do not require intervention by the network administrator.

Whatever level you choose, you receive event messages for that level and any other levels at a higher severity. If you choose Informational, for example, you are notified of any critical event. Conversely, if you want to be notified of only critical situations, select Critical, and you are not notified of any Informational or Warning events.

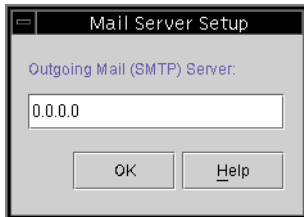
- d. Click Add to List.**

To delete a user from the list, select the mail address and click Delete from List.

- e. Specify the mail server to be used.**

Note that the Setup Mail Server button toggles with Change Mail Server, depending on whether a mail server has been defined previously.

For new setups, click Setup Mail Server. A Mail Server Setup window similar to the following is displayed.

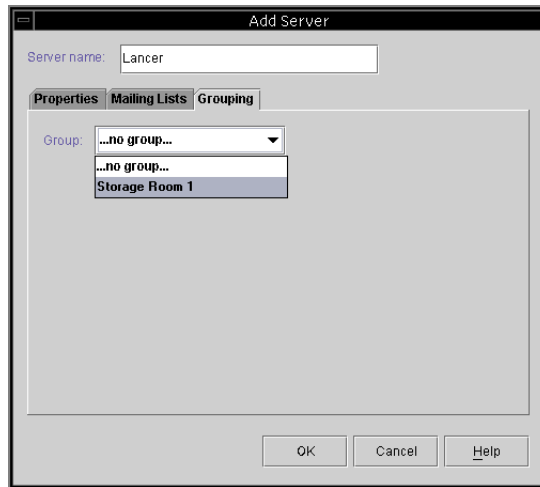


- f. Type the IP address or name of the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) mail server that is delivering the email messages to the destination addresses specified earlier, and click OK.**

The Add Server window is displayed showing the Mailing Lists tab.

- 7. Complete the Add Server function:**

- a. (Optional) If you want this server to be part of a group, select the Grouping tab. The Add Server window is displayed.



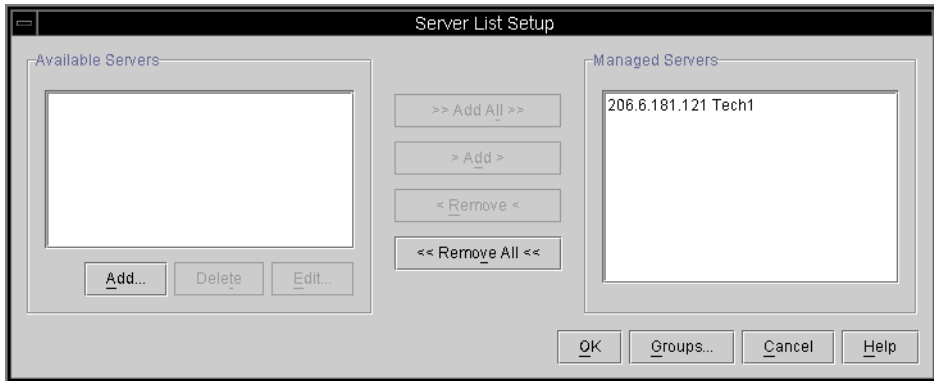
- b. Select the Group list box to view the choices available, select a group, and click OK.
8. If you want to add more servers, repeat Steps 3 through 7 for each server.
9. Move the servers you want this console to control to the Managed Servers list.
- If you want this console to manage all the available servers, click Add All located at the top of the dialog box.
 - To move individual servers to the managed column, select each server individually and click Add located between the two list boxes.
 - If during the process of adding servers, modifications need to be made, see ["To Edit a Server Entry" on page 204.](#)
10. When you are finished adding servers, click OK to return to the main window.

Note – If the array is attached to multiple hosts and an agent is installed on each host, each host's IP address must be entered and added to the Managed Servers list.

▼ To Delete Servers

1. **Choose File → Server List Setup.**

The Server List Setup window is displayed.



2. **Select the server you want to delete from the Managed Servers list.**

3. **Click Remove.**

The server is moved to the Available Servers list.

4. **Click Delete.**

▼ To Log In and Out

The log in and log out functions provide security within the program. Administrative functions require access logins and passwords to prevent the possibility of one administrator reallocating or removing storage resources belonging to other clients and hosts without authorization.

After installing Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, you should have assigned separate passwords for the following three levels of security:

- `ssmon` – Represents the monitoring level of the software; it displays alerts from the controller.
- `ssadmin` – Represents the administration level of the software; it provides access to Rebuild, Parity Check, and Schedule Parity Check functions, as well as monitoring.
- `ssconfig` – Represents the configuration level; it provides access to the configuration commands and all aspects of the program.

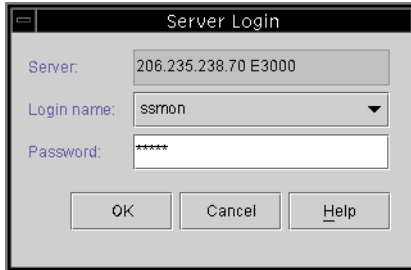
Note – In the event that one of these usernames is already in use, either modify the existing username, use one of the other Sun StorEdge Configuration Service usernames, or combine the two roles.

For more information on setting up users and passwords, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*.

Note – See Step 4d under [“To Add Servers” on page 12](#) for information on how to set up Sun StorEdge Configuration Service so that monitoring does not require the `ssmon` password.

1. To log in, choose File → Login, and type the assigned password for the specified level of security.

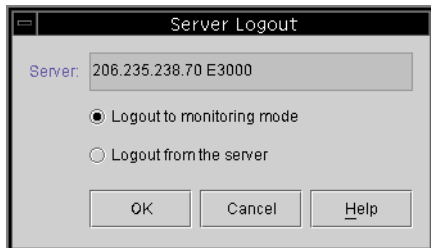
If the `ssmon` password was specified when the server was added, you do not have to log in to monitor the server. If the `ssmon` password was not specified when the server was added, whenever the console starts up, you need to log in as `ssmon` to monitor the server.



Maintain continuous access only as the monitoring user. When you select a command that requires the administration or configuration level, a login dialog box is displayed and you log into that level with the appropriate password. After completing your activity, log out.

2. To log out, choose File → Logout.

When you log out from the administration or configuration level, you are given the option of logging out to the monitoring mode or logging out from the server entirely.



▼ To Assign a Server to Manage a Controller

To manage and monitor an array, the agent needs to have access to a host logical unit number (LUN) mapped to a partition of a logical drive assigned to the primary controller of the array. The agent ignores all host LUNs mapped to a partition of a logical drive assigned to a secondary controller in a redundant configuration of an array. See [“RAID Basics” on page 209](#) for a discussion of logical drives and LUNs.

Note – If the same array is connected to multiple servers, it is possible to have the agent running on each of these servers trying to manage and monitor the same array. Due to a restriction on monitoring commands sent to the array controller by only one server at a time, some monitoring commands might fail if sent simultaneously by multiple servers. This could cause inaccurate reporting or the processes to stop responding. To prevent this from happening, the agent can be configured to enable and disable array monitoring on a server.

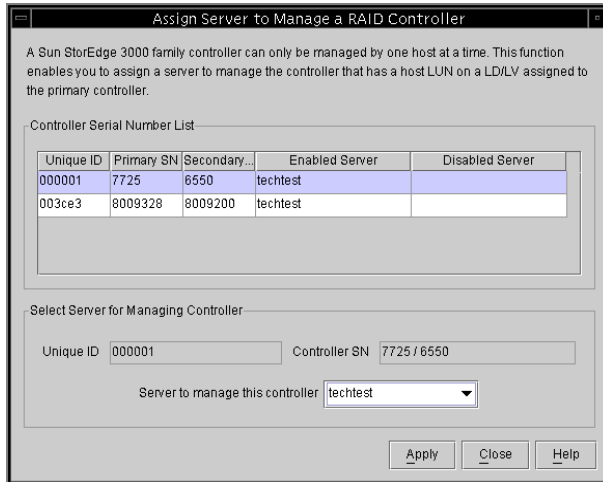
Perform the following procedure to assign a server to manage an array.

Note – Sun StorEdge Configuration Service can monitor and manage up to 32 arrays at one time. However, console response time can decrease as the number of arrays increases.

1. **Make sure all directly attached servers were added following the directions in [“To Add Servers” on page 12](#).**
This ensures that all Host names are present under Controller Assignments.
2. **From the main window, choose Array Administration → Controller Assignment.**
The Assign Server to Manage a RAID Controller window is displayed.
3. **Select the controller that you want to manage.**

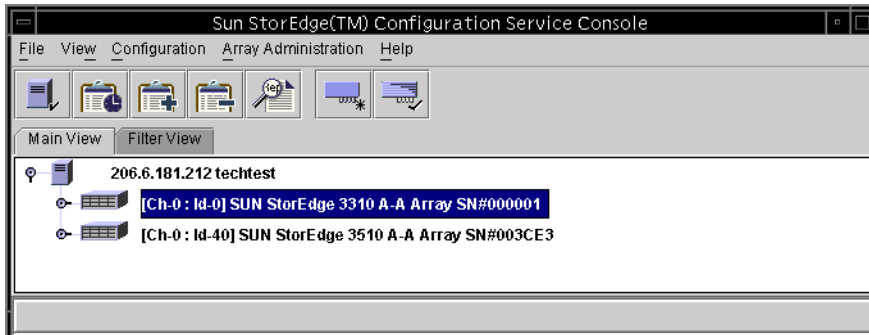
4. Select a server from the Server to manage this controller list and click Apply.

This enables the selected server to manage an array controller. It also disables all other servers listed from managing the same array.



5. Click Close to close the view.

As shown in the following example, the main window shows the controller device icons only under the server where the monitoring is enabled for this array.

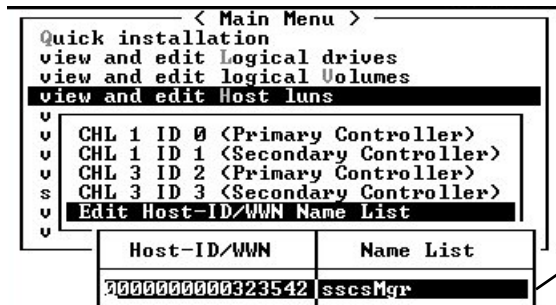


Changing a Server Assignment

When you assign a server to manage a controller, information regarding the managing server is produced. Sun StorEdge Configuration Service stores this information on a controller and uses it to keep track of the managing server. In the event a server is shut down, for maintenance for example, and you try to assign

another server to manage the controller, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service reads the stored server information from the controller and warns you that the controller is being managed already.

You can view the managing server name by choosing the firmware application menu called “view and edit Host luns → Edit Host-ID/WWN Name List.” (Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User’s Guide* for your array for information about accessing the firmware application.)



The server name is stored in hexadecimal values for the ASCII character set.

If you want to change a server assignment, for example, because you are moving an array to a new location, *before* you move the array, you need to unassign the managing server following the steps in “[To Unassign the Managing Server](#)” on page 24.

If you have already moved the array, when the array starts up, you might see a warning message that the controller is already being managed by another server. Because the “force” option doesn’t unassign the agent of the original server, only override the current server assignment after you have unassigned the original managing server. If you do not manually unassign the original server, it continues to monitor and manage the unit along with the new server.

After you have unassigned a server, you can also manually delete the server following the steps in “[To Manually Delete a Server Using the Terminal Window](#)” on page 24.

▼ To Unassign the Managing Server

1. From the main window, choose **Array Administration** → **Controller Assignment**.
2. Select the array controller for which you want to unassign a server.
3. From the **Server to manage this controller list**, select **none**, and click **Apply**.
4. Click **Close** to confirm.
5. Select the server you want to manage the controller following the steps in [“To Assign a Server to Manage a Controller” on page 21](#).

▼ To Manually Delete a Server Using the Terminal Window

Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for your array for information about accessing the firmware application.

1. From the **Main Menu**, choose **“view and edit Host luns** → **Edit Host-ID/WWN Name List** → **sscsMgr** → **Delete Host-ID/WWN Name List**.”
2. Choose **Yes** to confirm.

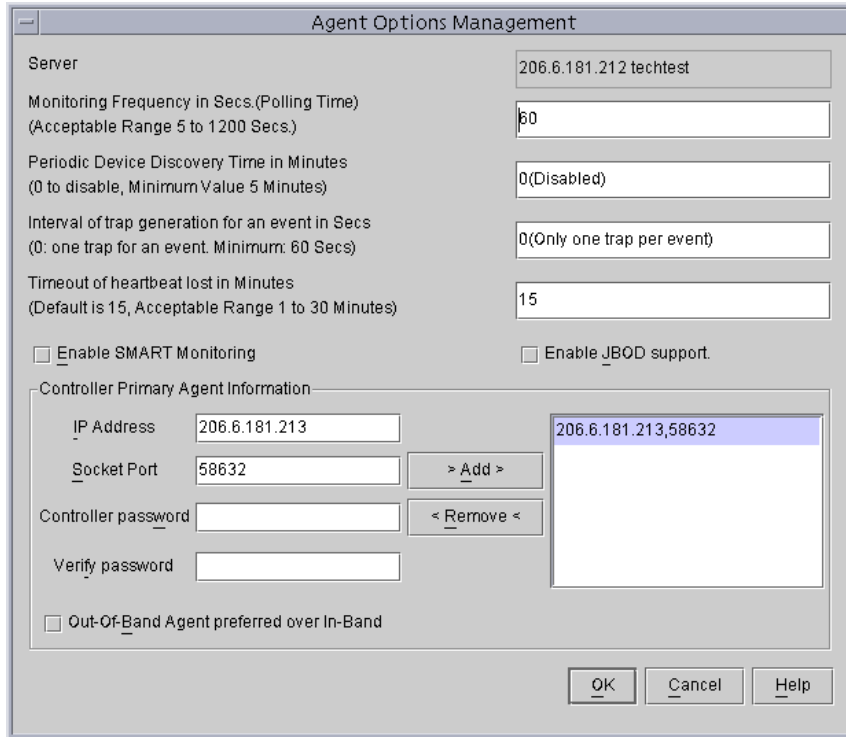
▼ To Configure Agent Parameters

Agent parameters specify how you want to connect to your storage. This section provides steps to configure parameters such as polling time, periodic device discovery time, smart monitoring, out-of-band storage management, and enabling JBOD support.

1. From the main window, choose **View** → **Agent Options Management**.

The Agent Options Management window is displayed.

Note – Agent Options Management might not be available if one or more groups are configured and one of them is selected in the main window. To enable it, select an icon other than a group, and click **View**.



2. For Monitoring Frequency, type the interval time in seconds that you want to poll for status.

This value is the interval between successive polling for any status change of devices, controllers, and enclosure monitoring by the agent. The default value is 60 seconds. If you want the console to update more frequently with device status changes, decrease this value.

Note – Increasing the polling interval could negatively impact error messaging under heavy I/O load.

3. For Periodic Device Discovery Time, type the value in minutes you want to check for new devices.

The periodic device discovery value is used to determine how often each device ID is scanned for a new device. The default value of 0 specifies not to scan for new devices. Note that device IDs are scanned less frequently as the numerical value increases.

Conversely, device IDs are scanned more frequently as the numerical value decreases. Five minutes is the minimum value.

4. **For Interval of trap generation for an event, type the amount of time in seconds between the sending of each trap message.**

If the value is 60 seconds or greater, a message is sent at that interval, for that particular trap, until the event is cleared or corrected. For example, if a fan fails, a message regarding that fan failure is sent every 60 seconds until fixed.

If the value is 0, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service (and therefore Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter) sends only one message regarding that particular event. For example, if a fan fails, only one email is sent.

5. **For Timeout of heartbeat lost, set the amount of time in minutes to wait between the sending of failed server messages.**

The default value is 15 minutes; the value range is 1 to 30 minutes.

6. **To Enable SMART Monitoring, select the check box.**

SMART monitoring is a method for hard drives to report predicted failures. Most disk vendors supply drives with this feature. The agent monitors this feature by issuing an unsolicited request sense. SMART monitoring can be turned off if this request causes conflicts with the underlying host operating system device drivers. For more information on SMART monitoring, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for your array.

7. **To Enable JBOD support, see [“To Enable JBOD Support” on page 26](#).**

8. **The parameters under Controller Primary Agent Information, including the Password fields, pertain to out-of-band management.**

See [“In-Band and Out-of-Band Storage Management” on page 117](#) for information about configuring these parameters.

9. **If you have changed any of the previous options, click OK to save your changes.**
10. **Click Close to finish the procedure.**

▼ To Enable JBOD Support

Use Just a Bunch of Disks (JBOD) support only when you have a JBOD connected directly to the server. This enables you to monitor the peripheral device condition and events. If you have a JBOD connected to the RAID array, the RAID controllers monitor the JBOD condition and events for you.

Note – Enabling JBOD support could impact I/O.

1. **From the main window, choose View → Agent Options Management.**

The Agent Options Management window is displayed.

2. Select Enable JBOD support.

For details on monitoring a JBOD, see [“Monitoring JBODs” on page 223](#).

▼ To Verify Storage Configurations


Once you have installed Sun StorEdge Configuration Service and have added all the servers for storage that you want managed, you need to verify the storage configurations.

Note – Most arrays are shipped preconfigured. If you want to completely remove the existing configuration and start over, see [“Full Configuration” on page 37](#). If you want to change the current configuration or add to it, see [“Updating the Configuration” on page 149](#).

1. Make sure the server icon is online (that is, the server symbol is purple).

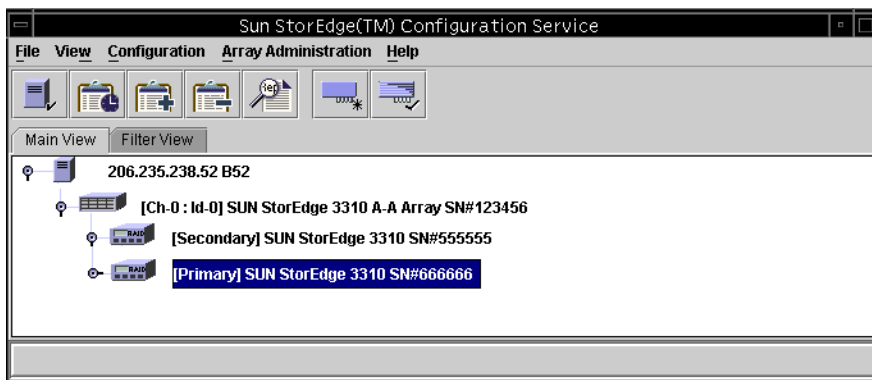
2. Observe the main window and check the storage configuration.


3. If you have multiple managed servers, select the server you want to check.

If the server icon is not purple, determine the server’s state (see [TABLE 6-1](#)). If the server’s icon has a satellite dish attached to it , the server might be in the discovery process and is available after a short delay.

4. Click the container symbol that appears to the left of the server whose storage you want to check.

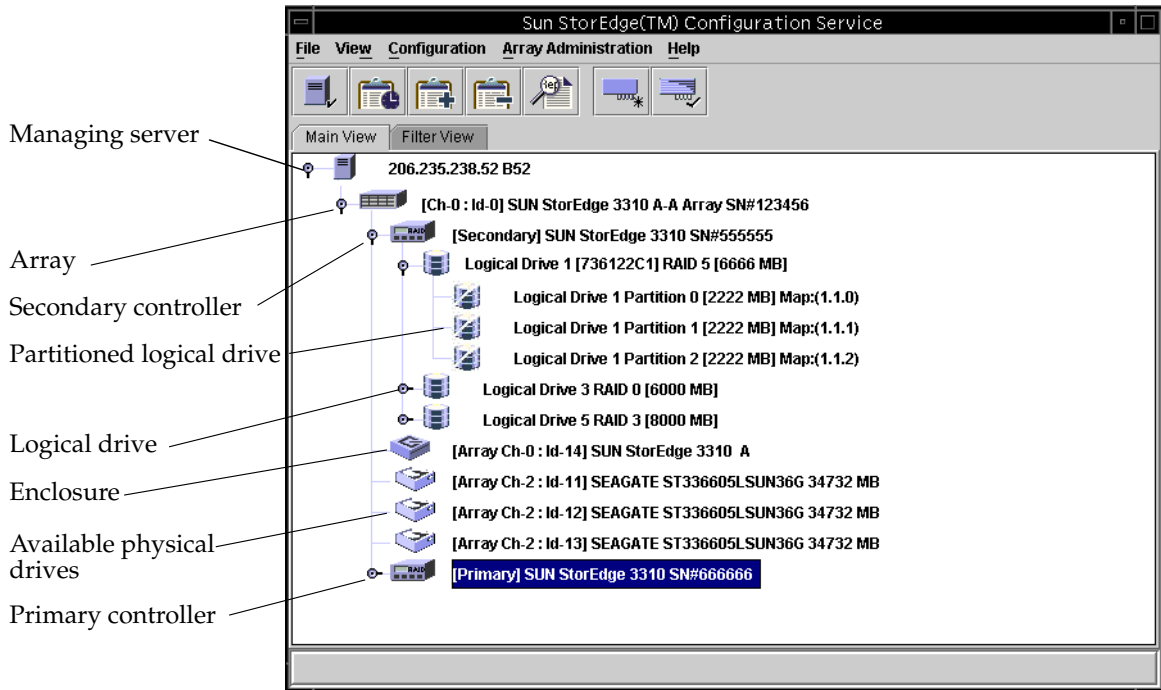
The program graphically displays each controller connected to the server as shown in the following figure.




- To see other details, click the container symbol  next to the controller whose storage you want to check.

If the array has not yet been configured, no logical drives (LUNs for controllers) are displayed.

If the array has been fully configured, the Sun StorEdge Configuration Service displays its associated devices. It looks similar to the devices displayed in the following example.



Selecting the container symbol  to the left of any logical drive displays its assigned physical drives.

Note – You can choose to view the physical (hard) drives that make up the logical drives by selecting or deselecting View → Display HDD under LD.

Your configuration might differ dramatically from that shown in the previous figure depending on the products you have installed.

If the array is not configured, see [“Full Configuration” on page 37](#) for instructions on configuring it.

- Check the RAID level and logical drive structure.

7. If the array is already configured and the configuration meets your needs, continue with the next section.

If you would like to change the configuration, see [“Full Configuration” on page 37](#).

▼ To Save the Logical Drive Configuration

Even though logical drive configuration information is stored on controllers and on the physical drives attached to them, extreme circumstances, such as fire can occur, causing damage to both the controller and the drives. Keep multiple backup copies of your current logical drive configuration on some form of external media other than the array. Keep at least one backup copy in a vault or secured location off site. A backup copy of the configuration enables you to restore the configuration to a new controller without having to completely reconfigure the array. If you do not have a backup copy of the current configuration, data could be lost. The saved configuration includes controller parameter settings and LUN mapping.

Always save your controller configuration to a file whenever you:

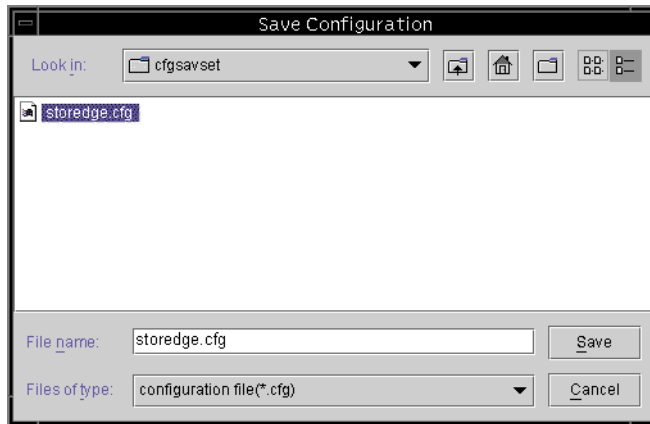
- Install a new storage system enclosure or change the SCSI ID for the controller in an existing enclosure
- Replace a controller
- Reconfigure or add logical drives to a controller
- Rebuild the data from a failed drive to a standby drive

To restore a configuration from a file, see [“To Restore a Logical Drive Configuration” on page 140](#).

1. Select the controller with the configuration you want to save.

2. Choose Configuration → Save Configuration.

The Save Configuration window is displayed.

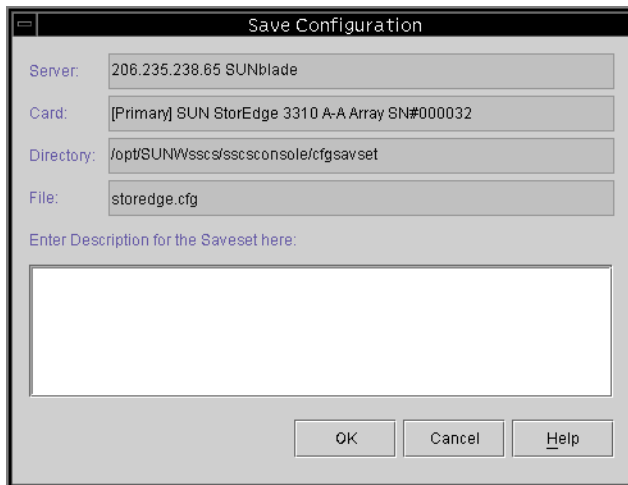


3. Navigate to the required drive and folder to locate the configuration file(s) to be updated, indicated by a .cfg extension.

Save the file(s) to a diskette or a drive external to the array. That is, maintain copies of these configuration files off site.

4. Specify the configuration file name and click Save.

The Save Configuration window is displayed.



5. Type a description of the configuration you are saving and click OK.

The controller configuration information is saved to a .cfg file.

Creating Host Partitions

When you are satisfied with your storage configuration, you can partition the new device through the OS.

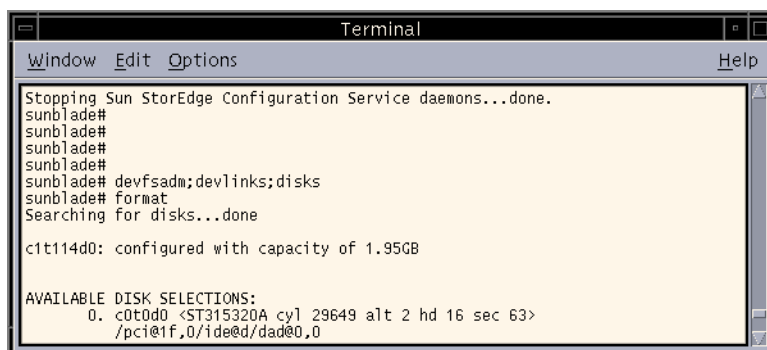
▼ To Create Solaris Host Partitions

The following steps are general guidelines. For detailed information, read about creating partitions and file systems in your Sun Solaris OS manual.

1. **For the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array or the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array only, make sure the Solaris OS can recognize multiple logical unit numbers (LUNs) under the same ID. You might need to modify `/kernel/drv/sd.conf` for additional LUN assignments. For information on how to modify this file, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.**
2. **Make sure the Solaris OS recognizes the new device and LUNs. For detailed steps, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.**
3. **Label a new device by typing:**

```
# format
```

The `format` command displays the system disk as well as other drives attached to the array.



```
Terminal
Window Edit Options Help
Stopping Sun StorEdge Configuration Service daemons...done.
sunblade#
sunblade#
sunblade#
sunblade#
sunblade# devfsadm;devlinks;disks
sunblade# format
Searching for disks...done

c1t114d0: configured with capacity of 1.95GB

AVAILABLE DISK SELECTIONS:
  0. c0t0d0 <ST315320A cyl 29649 alt 2 hd 16 sec 63>
    /pci@1f,0/ide@d/dad@0,0
```

A new device must be labeled with the `format` command before it can be set up for use by the array. When the `format` command is initiated, the devices that are available for use are displayed.

4. **Select the device to be used.**

Label the device if prompted.

5. **Type the word *partition* to view the existing partition table.**

After typing *partition*, you must type *print* to view the existing partition table.

6. **Edit the partition table as necessary and label it if changes are made.**

7. **Create file systems on the partitions using the `newfs` command.**


8. **Mount the file systems by using the `mount` command or by editing `/etc/vfstab` and using the `mountall` command.**

▼ To Create Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 Host Partitions

The following steps are general guidelines; for detailed information, refer to your Windows 2000 and Windows 2003 documentation.

1. **For Windows 2000, choose Start → Settings → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Computer Management → Disk Management.**

For Windows 2003, choose Start → Administrative Tools → Computer Management → Disk Management.

Make sure you can see the new drives marked by the disk icon  under Disk Management.

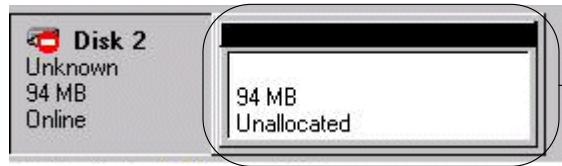
2. **Right-click the disk for which you want to write a signature, and select Write Signature.**

Right-click the disk for which you want to write a signature.



3. **Select the disk for which you want to create a partition, and click OK.**

4. Right-click the drive (where the drive capacity is shown), and select Create Partition.



5. Respond appropriately to the partition wizard prompts.

▼ To Create IBM AIX Host Logical Volumes

When you are satisfied with your storage configuration, you need to create at least one logical volume on the server.

The following steps are general guidelines. For detailed information, read about creating logical volumes in your AIX OS manual.

1. Determine that the drives are being recognized by the host by typing:

```
# lspv
```

Ensure that the disks have been assigned a PVID (physical volume identifier). This information displays in the second column. If no PVID is assigned, the column displays “None.”

2. If no PVID is assigned, open **smitty** and choose **Devices → Fixed Disks → Change /Show Characteristics → Assign Physical Volume Identifier**.
3. In **smitty**, create a volume group.
Choose **System Storage Management → Logical Volume Manager → Volume Groups → Add a Volume Group**.
4. In **smitty**, create a file system.
Choose **System Storage Management → File Systems → Add/Change/Show/Delete File Systems**.
5. Mount the logical volume.

▼ To Create HP-UX Host Logical Volumes

When you are satisfied with your storage configuration, you need to create at least one logical volume on the server.

The following steps are general guidelines. For detailed information, read about creating logical volumes in your HP-UX OS manual.

1. Determine that the drives are being recognized by the host by typing:

```
# ioscan -fnC disk
```

2. Start a System Administration Manager (sam) session.
3. Choose Disks and File Systems → Volume Groups.
4. From the Actions menu at the top of the window, click Create.
5. In the Create New Volume Group Name window, click Select New Volume Group Name, type a name for the New Volume Group, and click OK.
6. In the Create New Volume Group window, click Select Disk(s), select the drive(s) that are going to be in the Volume Group, and click OK.
7. In the Create New Volume Group window, click Define New Logical Volume(s).
 - a. In the LV name field, type a name for the logical volume.
 - b. Using the value displayed in the Approx Free Mbytes field, which specifies Mbytes left in the volume group, determine the size of the new logical volume.

Although you can create multiple logical volumes, you must create at least one. If you are creating one logical volume with the full capacity of the volume group, type the number displayed in the Approx Free Mbytes field. If you are creating multiple logical volumes, specify the size of each and type the size of the first logical volume.
 - c. In the Mount Directory field, type the directory where you want to mount the logical volume, and click Add.
 - d. To add more logical volumes, repeat Steps a-c.
 - e. When you have finished adding logical volumes, click OK.
8. In the Create New Volume Group window, click OK.
9. When you have finished creating logical volumes, close the Disk and File System window and close sam.

What to Do Next

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service is now installed, set up, and ready to use. See the following chapters for additional tasks:

- [“Monitoring the Array” on page 75](#), for information about how to use Sun StorEdge Configuration Service to monitor storage devices.
- [“Maintaining the Array” on page 127](#), for information about maintaining the array. It includes detailed information about parity checking, scheduling parity checks, rebuilding failed drives, and restoring a configuration from a backup file.
- [“Updating the Configuration” on page 149](#), when you want to update the configuration of the storage array. It also covers changing controller features, making or changing a standby drive, and editing the information for available servers.

Full Configuration

Sun preconfigures logical drives on the array before shipment. Read this chapter only if the array is not already configured, or if you want to *completely* remove the existing configuration and start again. If you want to make changes to the existing configuration, see [“Updating the Configuration” on page 149](#).

Full configuration includes the following topics:

- [“Configuring Logical Drives and Logical Volumes” on page 38](#)
 - [“To Use Standard Configuration” on page 39](#)
 - [“To Use Custom Configuration” on page 44](#)
 - [“To Create and Partition a Logical Volume” on page 57](#)
 - [“To Clear a Configuration” on page 59](#)
 - [“To Log Out of the Configuration Level” on page 60](#)
- [“Host LUN Assignments” on page 60](#)
 - [“To Add or Change \(Map\) a Host LUN” on page 61](#)
 - [“To Delete \(Unmap\) a Host LUN” on page 62](#)
- [“Configuration File” on page 62](#)
 - [“To Save a Configuration to a Backup File” on page 63](#)

For the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array or the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array, if you are planning to set up a cluster configuration, see [“Using the Cluster Configuration \(SCSI Only\)” on page 233](#).

The Configuration menu commands and toolbar icons might be temporarily disabled if an array administration process, such as parity checking, is running. The menu command is also deactivated when the console is refreshing its inventory on the server. A satellite dish symbol is attached to the server icon during the refresh process.



Caution – Back up any existing data to an external device before configuring the array. Reconfiguration overwrites any existing logical drive configuration. When the existing logical drive configuration is overwritten, all data is effectively erased.

Configuring Logical Drives and Logical Volumes

The information contained in this section describes how to configure logical drives and logical volumes using Standard or Custom Configuration.

Logical Drives

Depending on whether you want to use one or multiple RAID levels, logical drives can be configured using Standard or Custom Configuration.

Logical Volumes

Logical volumes are created using Custom Configuration only. However, while the ability to create and manage logical volumes remains a feature of Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, the size and performance of physical and logical drives have made the use of logical volumes obsolete. Logical volumes are unsuited to some modern configurations such as Sun Cluster environments, and do not work in those configurations. Avoid using them and use logical drives instead.

Maximum Number of Supported Logical Drives, Logical Partitions, and LUN Assignments

The following table lists the maximum number of logical drives, partitions per logical drive, number of partitions per logical volume, and maximum number of LUN assignments for the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array, and the Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array.

TABLE 4-1 Maximum Number of Supported Logical and Physical Drives, Partitions, and LUN Assignments

Array	Physical Drives	Logical Drives	Partitions per Logical Drive	Partitions per Logical Volume	LUN Assignments
Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array and Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array	36 (1 array and 2 expansion units)	16	32	32	128
Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array	108 (1 array and 8 expansion units)	32	32	32	128 (point-to-point mode) 64 (point-to-point mode, redundant configuration) 1024 (loop mode) 512 (loop mode, redundant configuration)
Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array	72 (1 array and 5 expansion units)	32	32	32	128 (point-to-point mode) 64 (point-to-point mode, redundant configuration) 1024 (loop mode) 512 (loop mode, redundant configuration)

▼ To Use Standard Configuration

Use Standard Configuration Options to configure all of the storage attached to an array controller using *one* RAID level. All you need to specify is the RAID controller, optimization mode, RAID level, and whether you want a standby drive. Sun StorEdge Configuration Service then automatically configures the storage for you, creating one or more logical drives, depending on the RAID level and the number of drives available. Write-back cache is selected by default. You are able to see the resulting configuration and accept or reject it before it is completed.



Caution – Standard Configuration creates one large logical drive. In FC and SATA configurations with large device capacities, the size of the logical drive might exceed the device capacity limitation of your OS. Be sure to check the device capacity limitation of your OS *before* using Standard Configuration.



Caution – Back up any existing data to an external device before using Standard Configuration. Standard Configuration overwrites any existing logical drive configuration. When the existing logical drive configuration is overwritten, all data is effectively erased.

1. **Log in as an `ssconfig` user.**
2. **Select the array that you want to configure.**
3. **Determine whether the optimization mode of the logical drive is to be Sequential I/O (default) or Random I/O.**

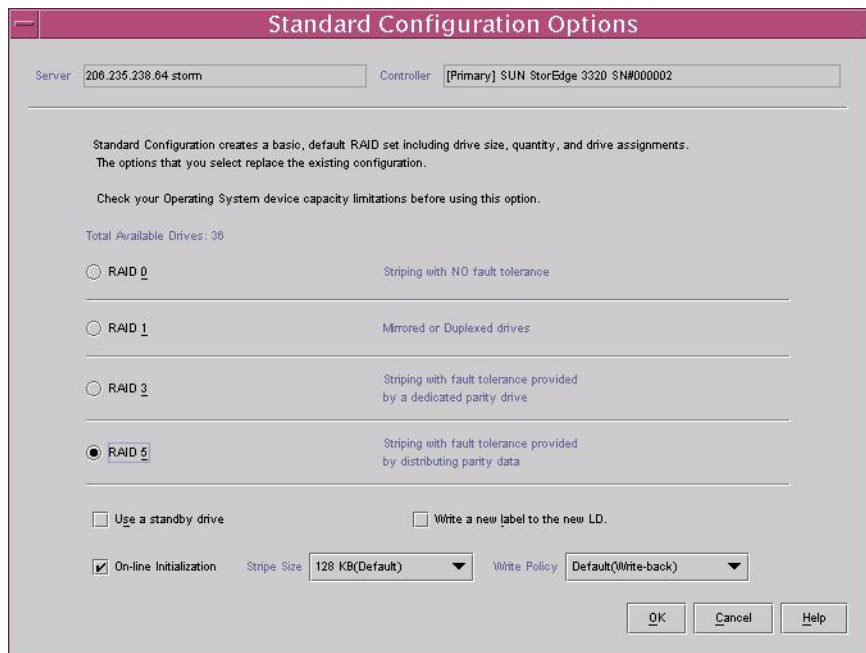
The optimization mode you select determines the maximum number of disks you can include in an array and the maximum usable capacity of a logical drive, total array capacity, and cache block size.

Optimization is set in the Cache tab of the Change Controller Parameters window and is set to Sequential by default. For more information on Sequential I/O and Random I/O, and for steps on how to change the optimization mode, see [“Cache Tab” on page 185](#).

4. **Choose Configuration → Standard Configure.**

A Standard Configuration Warning message is displayed. Click OK to continue.

The Standard Configuration Options window is displayed. If you are not currently logged in as `ssconfig`, a login dialog is displayed.



The options on the window might be disabled, depending on the number of drives available and whether you have the Solaris OS or a Windows OS on the server.

Note – In FC and SATA configurations with large device capacities, the size of the logical drive might exceed the device capacity limitation of your OS. Be sure to check the device capacity limitation of your OS before using Standard Configuration.

The cluster configuration option creates a quorum RAID 5 logical drive (100 Mbyte) and then allocates the remaining capacity over two large RAID 5 logical drives. For this option, three or more physical drives are required.

5. Verify the server and the controller IDs displayed at the top of the window are correct.

If the server and the controller displayed at the top of the window are not correct, click Cancel to exit the configuration window and return to the main window. Select the appropriate device and select the window again.

6. Indicate whether you want to use one of the drives as a standby drive.

When you select Use a standby drive, the program deactivates the RAID levels that do not use standby drives. (For example, RAID 0 has no fault tolerance; therefore, a standby drive provides no benefit.)

7. From the RAID levels made available, select the appropriate RAID level for the logical drive you are configuring.

For definitions of the RAID levels, see [“RAID Basics” on page 209](#).

You need a minimum of three drives to use RAID 3 or 5. If you select RAID 1, every logical drive requires at least two physical drives. If you select four or more drives, a logical drive with a RAID 1+0 is created.

8. (Solaris OS only). If you want the new logical drive to be automatically labeled, which enables the OS to use the drive, click Write a new label to the new LD.

9. To use the logical drive immediately, select On-line Initialization.

Because logical drive initialization can take up to several hours, you can choose to initialize a logical drive on-line.

On-line initialization enables you to begin configuring and using the logical drive before initialization is complete. However, because the controller is building the logical drive while performing I/O operations, initializing a logical drive on-line requires more time than off-line initialization.

If you do not select On-line initialization, you can configure and use the drive only after initialization is complete. Because the controller is building the logical drive without having to also perform I/O operations, off-line initialization requires less time than on-line initialization.

10. Select the stripe size.

Select a Default value to assign the stripe size per Optimization mode as specified in [TABLE 4-2](#), or select a different stripe size.

TABLE 4-2 Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode

RAID Level	Sequential I/O	Random I/O
0, 1, 5	128	32
3	16	4

Once the stripe size is selected and data is written to logical drives, the only way to change the stripe size of an individual logical drive is to back up all its data to another location, delete the logical drive, and create a logical drive with the stripe size that you want.

11. Specify Default, Write-through, or Write-back as the Write Policy for the logical drive.

The write policy determines when cached data is written to the disk drives. The ability to hold data in cache while it is being written to disk can increase storage device speed during sequential reads. Write policy options include write-through and write-back.

Using write-through cache, the controller writes the data to the disk drive before signaling the host OS that the process is complete. Write-through cache has lower write operation and throughput performance than write-back cache, but it is the safer strategy, with minimum risk of data loss on power failure. Because a battery module is installed, power is supplied to the data cached in memory and the data can be written to disk when power is restored.

Using write-back cache, the controller receives the data to write to disk, stores it in the memory buffer, and immediately sends the host OS a signal that the write operation is complete, before the data is actually written to the disk drive. Write-back caching improves the performance of write operations and the throughput of the controller card. Write-back cache is enabled by default.

Note – The setting you specify in the Write Back field on the Cache tab of the Change Controller Parameters window is the default global cache setting for *all* logical drives. (See [“Cache Tab” on page 185.](#))

- Default (Write-through or Write-back) – Assigns the global write policy that is specified in the Write Back field of the Cache Tab on the Change Controller Parameters window. If the global setting for write policy is changed, automatically changes the write policy for this logical drive.

The array can be configured to dynamically switch write policy from write-back cache to write-through cache if specified events occur. Write policy is only automatically switched for logical drives with write policy configured to “Default.” See [“Peripheral Tab” on page 195](#) for more information about event trigger operations.

- Write-back – Assigns write-back cache regardless of any changes to the global write policy.
- Write-through – Assigns write-through cache regardless of any changes to the global write policy.

12. Click OK.

The Confirm Configuration Operation window is displayed showing the new configuration.

13. Click OK to accept the configuration as indicated; otherwise, click Cancel to return to the console.

14. (HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

15. (IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206](#).

Media Scan

A firmware menu option called Media Scan at Power-Up specifies whether media scan runs automatically following a controller power-cycle, reset, or after logical drive initialization. This setting is disabled by default. For more information, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide*.

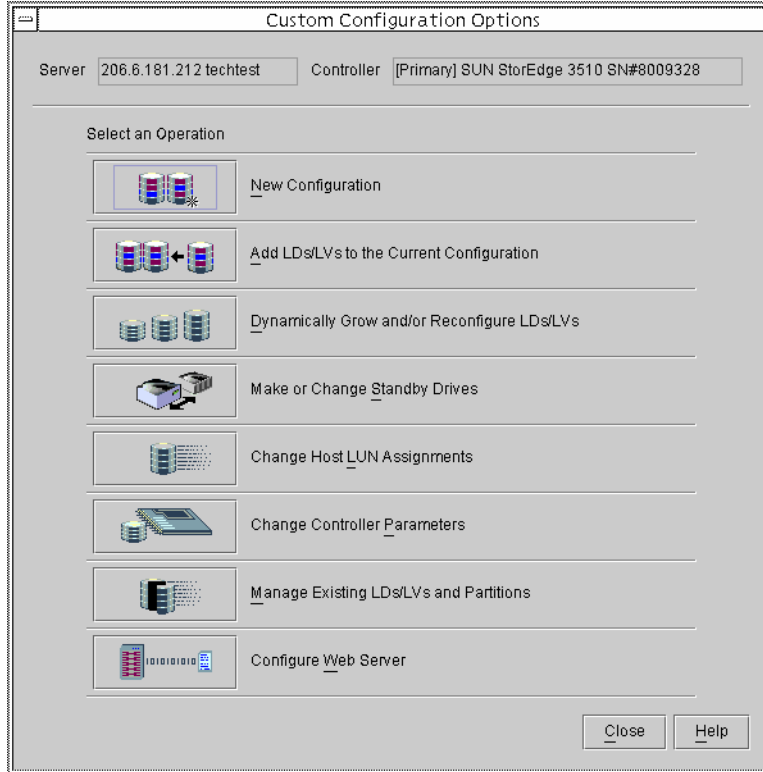
To determine whether or not media scan is running, see the event log. For more information on the event log window, see [“Event Log Window” on page 112](#). For more information about media scan, see [“To Scan Physical Disks for Bad Blocks \(Media Scan\)” on page 132](#).

▼ To Use Custom Configuration

Custom Configuration gives you multiple choices for configuring or reconfiguring logical drives with *varying* RAID levels. It also gives you the option of adding newly created logical drives to logical volumes.

1. Log in as an `ssconfig` user.
2. Select the array that you want to configure.
3. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.

The Custom Configuration Options window is displayed.



- New Configuration – Configures new logical drives with varying RAID levels and other RAID parameters and enables you to add the new logical drives to logical volumes. The New Configuration command erases the previous configuration on an array controller.
- Add LDs/LVs to the Current Configuration – Adds new logical drives/logical volumes to an existing configuration. This command does not erase the other configured logical drives on the controller.
- Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs – Enables you to expand the capacity of logical drives and logical volumes, add drives to existing logical drives and logical volumes, and copy and replace all member drives with drives of higher capacity.
- Make or Change Standby Drives – Adds one or more new standby drives to be associated with the array controller.
- Change Host LUN Assignments – Enables you to assign logical drives, logical volumes, and partitions to a host channel.

- Change Controller Parameters – Enables you to modify the controller parameters
- Manage Existing LDs/LVs and Partitions – Enables you to delete individual logical drives and logical volumes and create/delete partitions from existing logical drives and logical volumes.
- Configure Web Server (Sun StorEdge Enterprise Storage Manager Topology Reporter software required) – Enables you to configure a web server so you can manage/monitor an array through a web browser.

In this chapter, the New Configuration option is described in detail. Configure Web Server is described in [“Managing Storage Through the Web” on page 123](#). The remaining options are described in [“Updating the Configuration” on page 149](#).

The New Configuration Option

The New Configuration option enables you to customize the logical drive configuration to meet the specific needs of your environment. You can configure and partition one or more logical drives with varying RAID levels. You can then add two or more logical drives (unpartitioned) to a logical volume and divide the logical volume into a maximum of 32 partitions.

Note – On UNIX systems, if the console locks up during use, obtain the process number, and then close and reopen the window as described in [“If Console Locks Up During Use” on page 11](#).

Before You Use New Configuration

Before you use New Configuration to create a logical drive or a logical volume for the first time, it is useful to familiarize yourself with the information contained in the following steps. Knowing this information ahead of time will ease the process of creating a logical drive or volume.

Note – Logical volumes are unsuited to some modern configurations such as Sun Cluster environments, and do not work in those configurations. Use logical drives instead. For more information, see [“Logical Volumes” on page 38](#).

1. If you have preconfigured logical drives that you want to delete, see [“To Delete a Logical Drive or Logical Volume” on page 157](#) for information, including how to unmap assigned LUNs.

Note – On preconfigured Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA arrays, you must first unmap and delete logical drives so you can create new logical drives that support redundancy.

2. Determine whether the optimization mode of the logical drive is to be Sequential I/O (default) or Random I/O.

The optimization mode you select determines the maximum number of disks you can include in an array and the maximum usable capacity of a logical drive, total array capacity, and cache block size.

Optimization is set in the Cache tab of the Change Controller Parameters window and is set to Sequential by default. For more information on Sequential I/O and Random I/O, and for steps on how to change the optimization mode, see [“Cache Tab” on page 185](#).

3. Determine the total number of physical disks to be included in the logical drive, which is dependent on the optimization mode selected.

If the security of your data is important, leave remaining disks for standby drives.

For information on the maximum number of disks and maximum usable capacity per logical drive for random and sequential optimization, see [“Maximum Number of Disks and Maximum Usable Capacity for Random and Sequential Optimization” on page 187](#).

Note – If the logical drive is going to be larger than 253 Gbyte, see [“To Prepare for Logical Drives Larger Than 253 Gbyte” on page 49](#).

4. Determine whether any standby (spare) drives are to be local or global.

A standby drive is a drive that is marked as a spare to support automatic data rebuilding after a physical drive associated with a logical drive fails. For a standby drive to take the place of another drive, it must be at least equal in size to the failed drive. Also, the failed drive itself must be from a RAID 1, 3, or 5.

A local spare drive is a standby drive assigned to serve one specified logical drive. When a member drive of this specified logical drive fails, the local spare drive becomes a member drive and automatically starts to rebuild.

A global spare drive does not only serve one specified logical drive. When a member drive from any of the logical drives fail, the global spare drive joins that logical drive and automatically starts to rebuild. Global spares are used in the order in which they are created.

5. Determine the RAID level; the program automatically computes the maximum size logical drive that can be created at that RAID level.

6. Determine whether you want to partition the logical drive.

A *partition* is a division of the logical drive (or logical volume). Partitions enable you to create the appearance of having separate logical drives (or logical volumes) for file management, multiple users, or other purposes.

Note – Partitioning can be done during the initial configuration or after the logical drive has been created.

Note – Logical drives that have more than one partition cannot be added to a logical volume.

7. Understand the disk capacities displayed in the New Configuration window.

- Max Drive Size (MB) – displays the maximum drive size per selected physical disk (total capacity of each disk).

A smaller logical drive can be created by decreasing this value. The remainder can be used later by expanding the drive (as explained in [“To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume” on page 164](#)).

- Available Size (MB) – displays the total capacity of all disks, which is the total logical drive or logical volume size.

Note – The maximum usable capacity for a logical drive is equal to the smallest physical disk size. For example, if you add an 18-Gbyte disk and then add a 70-Gbyte disk to be part of the logical drive, the maximum usable capacity is 18 Gbyte per drive.

Note – Disk capacity is displayed in powers of 1024. See [“Device Capacities” on page 79](#) for specific capacity definitions.

8. Determine whether the logical drive is to be part of a logical volume.

Note – Logical volumes are unsuited to some modern configurations such as Sun Cluster environments, and do not work in those configurations. Use logical drives instead. For more information, see [“Logical Volumes” on page 38](#).

Note – Logical drives that have more than one partition cannot be added to a logical volume.

9. Determine whether you want to partition the logical volume.

Note – Partitioning can be done during the initial configuration or after the logical volume has been created.

▼ To Prepare for Logical Drives Larger Than 253 Gbyte

The Solaris OS requires drive geometry for various operations, including `newfs`. For the appropriate drive geometry to be presented to the Solaris OS for logical drives larger than 253 Gbyte, you have to configure Host Cylinder/Head/Sector Mapping Configuration using the firmware application. Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for your array for information about accessing the firmware application.

1. In the firmware application, choose “view and edit Configuration parameters → Host-Side Parameters → Host Cylinder/Head/Sector Mapping Configuration → Sector Ranges - → Variable,” and then choose Yes to confirm your choice.
2. Choose Head Ranges and specify 64.
3. Choose Cylinder Ranges and specify Variable.

Note – Refer to your operating system documentation for limitations on device sizes.

▼ To Create and Partition a Logical Drive Using New Configuration

Before you create and partition a logical drive using New Configuration for the first time, it is useful to review the steps under “[Before You Use New Configuration](#)” on [page 46](#).

The following steps provide a working example of how to create a new configuration for a new logical drive. Three logical drives are selected and configured into a RAID 5 logical drive. A small logical drive is then created and partitioned.



Caution – Back up any existing data to an external device before using the New Configuration command. Sun StorEdge Configuration Service automatically initializes new logical drives defined on the array controller.

1. Log in as an `ssconfig` user.
2. Select the controller that you want to configure.

3. Make sure that you have selected the appropriate Optimization mode for your application.

Optimization is set in the Cache tab of the Change Controller Parameters window and is set to Sequential by default. For steps on how to change the Optimization mode, see [“Cache Tab” on page 185](#).

4. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.

5. Click New Configuration.

A New Configuration Warning message is displayed.

6. Click OK.

7. Verify that the Server and Controller displayed at the top of the window are correct.

If the server and the controller displayed are not correct, click Cancel to exit the New Configuration window and return to the main window. Select the appropriate disk controller and reselect New Configuration.

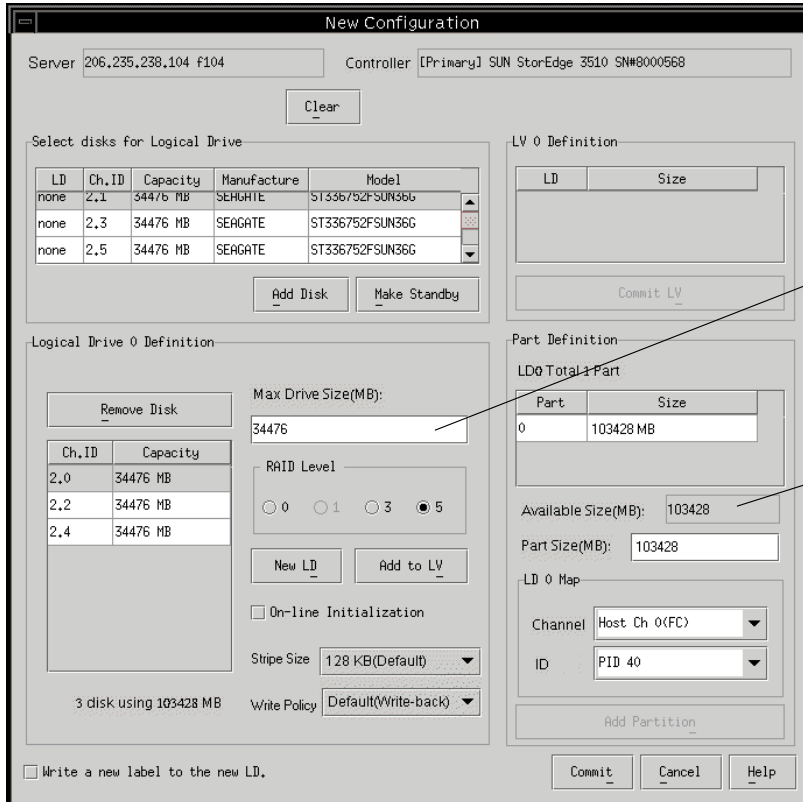
8. In the Select disks for Logical Drive list, select the first disk and click Add Disk.

Proceed to add the next two disks so that three disks are displayed in the lower list box.

If you make a mistake or change your mind, select the drive from the drives list and click Remove Disk.

Note – Because the logical drive has not been partitioned yet, the Part Size (MB) and the Available Size (MB) are equal. A single logical drive is considered to be a single partition.

Note – Mixing SATA and FC disks to create a logical drive is not supported.



Max Drive Size – displays the total capacity of each disk

Available Size – displays the total capacity of all disks, which is the total logical drive size

9. Select the RAID Level. For this example, select RAID Level 5.

This RAID level applies to all disks in this logical drive.

In this example, the new logical drive is composed of three physical disks, totaling 103428 Mbyte, as indicated in the Available Size (MB) field.

The maximum number of disks per logical drive for each RAID level for a 2U array is:

- RAID 0 - 36
- RAID 1 - 2
- RAID 1+0 - 36
- RAID 3 or 5 - 31

For RAID 1, note that if you select four or more drives, a logical drive with a RAID 1+0 is created.

10. Set the Max Drive Size.

The Max Drive Size displays the total capacity of each disk. A smaller logical drive can be created by decreasing this value.

Note – If you do not change the Max Drive Size but you change the Partition Size, a new partition is created at the specified partition size. The remaining logical drive size capacity moves to the last partition. If you do change the Max Drive Size, the remaining capacity can be used later by expanding the drive (as explained in [“To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume” on page 164](#)).

11. From the Channel and ID list boxes, select the host channel and ID to which you want the new logical drive mapped.

Host channels connect to host computers either directly or indirectly through switches or other devices. Select the appropriate host channel based on the physical connection from the server to the array.

The ID is a unique address that identifies the logical drive to the host.

Note – If you do not want to map the logical drive at this time, select Do Not Map from the Channel list box.

12. To use the logical drive immediately, while it is building, select On-line Initialization.

Because logical drive initialization can take up to several hours, you can choose to initialize a logical drive on-line.

On-line initialization enables you to begin configuring and using the logical drive before initialization is complete. However, because the controller is building the logical drive while performing I/O operations, initializing a logical drive on-line requires more time than off-line initialization.

If you do not select On-line initialization, you can configure and use the drive only after initialization is complete. Because the controller is building the logical drive without having to also perform I/O operations, off-line initialization requires less time than on-line initialization.

Note – On-line Initialization does not apply to logical volumes.

13. Select the Stripe Size.

Select Default to assign the stripe size per Optimization mode as specified in [TABLE 4-2](#), or select a different stripe size.

TABLE 4-3 Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode

RAID Level	Sequential I/O	Random I/O
0, 1, 5	128	32
3	16	4

Once the stripe size is selected and data is written to logical drives, the only way to change the stripe size of an individual logical drive is to back up all its data to another location, delete the logical drive, and create a logical drive with the stripe size that you want.



Caution – Only change the stripe size after you have tested the effects on your application.

14. Specify Default, Write-through, or Write-back as the Write Policy.

The write policy determines when cached data is written to the disk drives. The ability to hold data in cache while it is being written to disk can increase storage device speed during sequential reads. Write policy options include write-through and write-back.

Using write-through cache, the controller writes the data to the disk drive before signaling the host OS that the process is complete. Write-through cache has lower write operation and throughput performance than write-back cache, but it is the safer strategy, with minimum risk of data loss on power failure. Because a battery module is installed, power is supplied to the data cached in memory and the data can be written to disk when power is restored.

Using write-back cache, the controller receives the data to write to disk, stores it in the memory buffer, and immediately sends the host OS a signal that the write operation is complete, before the data is actually written to the disk drive. Write-back caching improves the performance of write operations and the throughput of the controller card. Write-back cache is enabled by default.

Note – The setting you specify in the Write Back field on the Cache tab of the Change Controller Parameters window is the default global cache setting for *all* logical drives. (See [“Cache Tab”](#) on page 185.)

- Default (Write-through or Write-back) – Assigns the global write policy that is specified in the Write Back field of the Cache Tab on the Change Controller Parameters window. If the global setting for write policy is changed, automatically changes the write policy for this logical drive

The array can be configured to dynamically switch write policy from write-back cache to write-through cache if specified events occur. Write policy is only automatically switched for logical drives with write policy configured to “Default.” See [“Peripheral Tab” on page 195](#) for more information about event trigger operations.

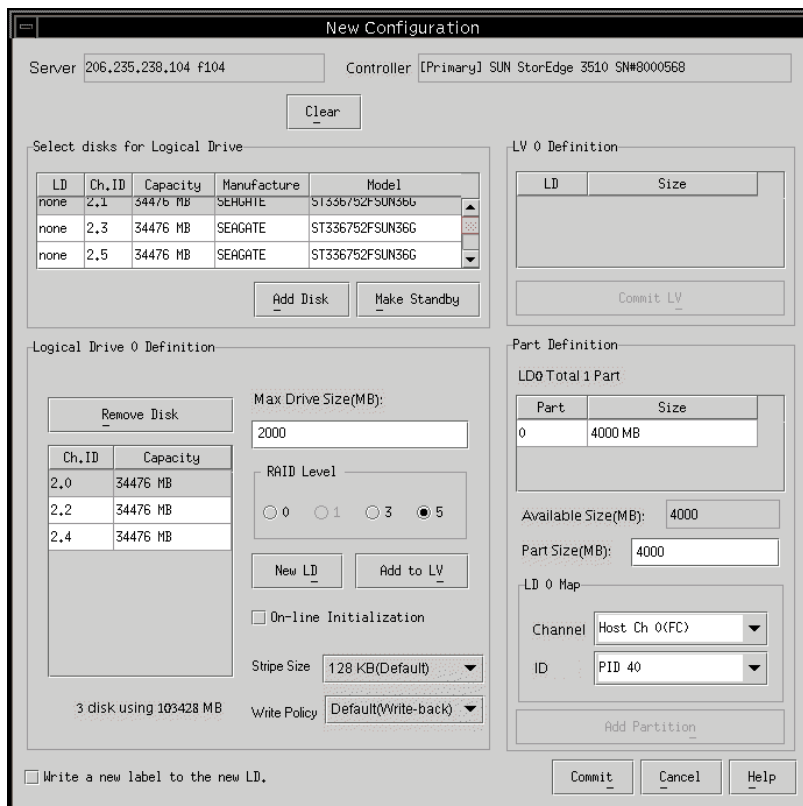
- Write-back – Assigns write-back cache regardless of any changes to the global write policy.
- Write-through – Assigns write-through cache regardless of any changes to the global write policy.

15. This step depends on what you want to do next:

- To create another logical drive, click New LD and repeat Step 1 through Step 14.
- To add this logical drive to a logical volume, click Add to LV and see [“To Create and Partition a Logical Volume” on page 57](#).
- To partition this logical drive, continue with the following steps. In this example, a small logical drive is created and partitioned.
- If you are finished creating logical drives and do not want to add this logical drive to a logical volume or partition it, click Commit.

16. To create a small logical drive, type 2000 in the Max Drive Size field.

Note – A total of 4000 Mbyte is shown for the logical drive size as opposed to 6000 Mbyte; because this is a RAID 5 level, you lose the capacity equal to 1 drive (2000 Mbyte) for parity.



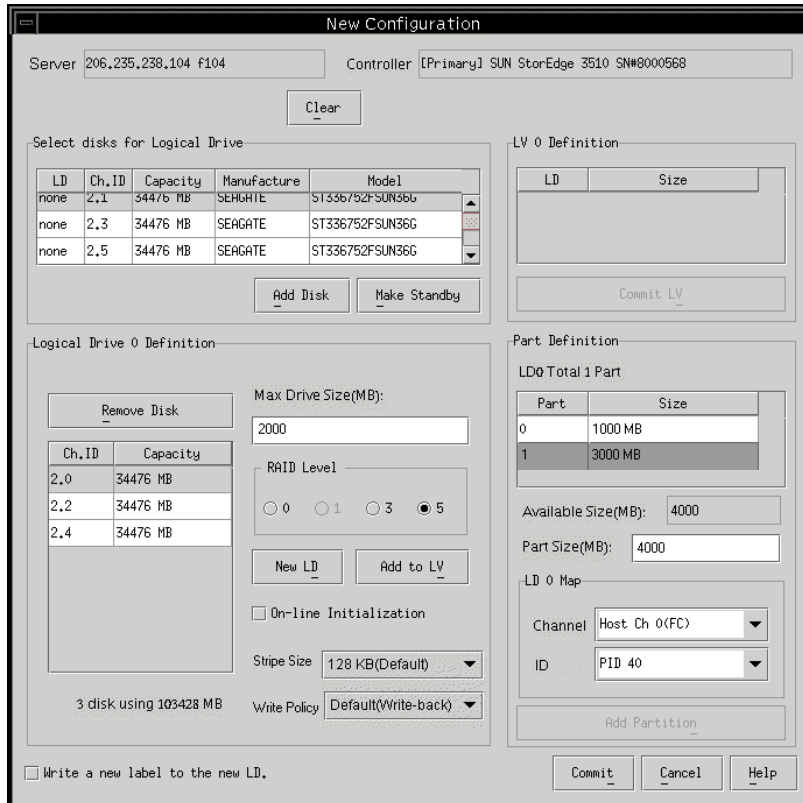
17. To create a partition, type 1000 in the Part Size field and click Add Partition.

Note – Do not partition a logical drive if you plan on adding it to a logical volume. Once a logical drive is partitioned, it cannot be added to a logical volume.

To create multiple partitions of the same size, click Add Partition as many times as partitions you want to create. You can also type the partition size in the Part Size field and multiply (*) it by the number of partitions you want to create, for example 100*128. Any remaining Mbyte is added to the last partition.

As you add partitions, the remaining capacity displayed in Available Size (MB) decreases by the amount of the partition size.

As shown in the following example, of the original 4000 Mbyte, 1000 Mbyte was allocated to Partition 0. The remaining 3000 Mbyte is then automatically moved to Partition 1. The remaining usable capacity is displayed in the Available Size (MB) field.



18. (Solaris OS only). If you want the new logical drive to be automatically labeled, which enables the OS to use the drive, click **Write a new label to the new LD.**
19. Click **Commit** to end the configuration of the logical drive or **New LD** to configure another logical drive.

When you click **New LD**, any available disks that haven't been used are displayed. When the logical drive configuration for this array is complete, click **Commit**, and then click **OK**. The completed configuration is displayed.

Note – You cannot change a logical drive configuration after you click **OK**.

Note – During initialization, LD/LV size is displayed as 0 Mbyte.

20. (HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

21. **(IBM AIX OS only).** To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206](#).

▼ To Create and Partition a Logical Volume

A logical volume is composed of two or more logical drives and can be divided into a maximum of 32 partitions. During operation, the host sees a nonpartitioned logical volume or a partition of a logical volume as one single physical drive.

Note – Logical volumes are unsuited to some modern configurations such as Sun Cluster environments, and do not work in those configurations. Use logical drives instead. For more information, see [“Logical Volumes” on page 38](#).

1. **Create a logical drive as described in Steps 1-11 in [“To Create and Partition a Logical Drive Using New Configuration” on page 49](#).**

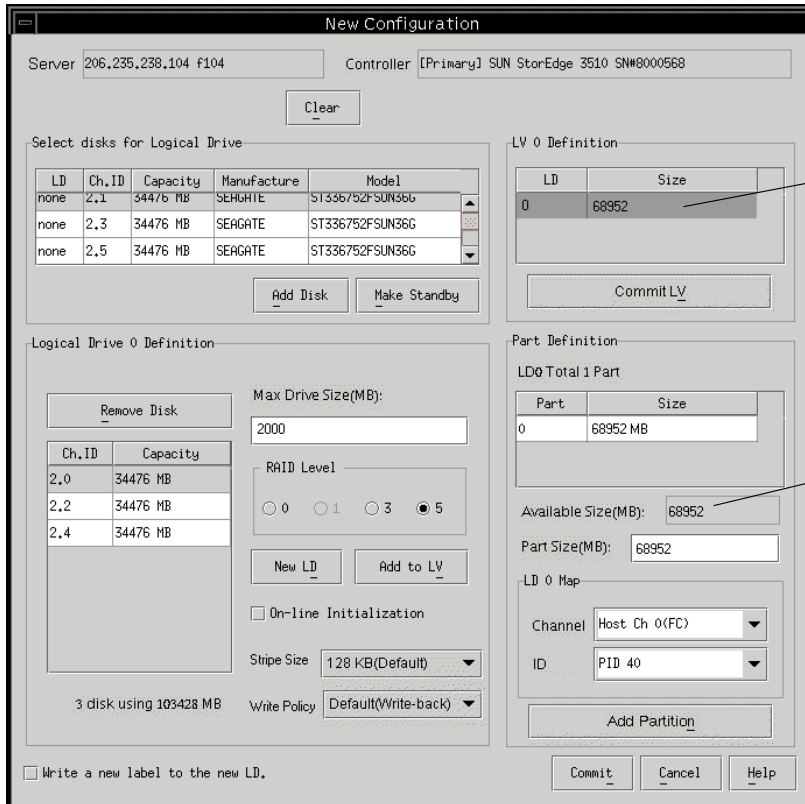
Note – Do not partition the logical drive that you are adding to the logical volume. A logical drive that has been partitioned cannot be added to a logical volume.

2. **Before you click Commit, to add the logical drive to a logical volume, click Add to LV.**

The logical drive is added to the LV Definition box. The total size of the logical volume is displayed in the Available Size (MB) field.

Note – Because the logical volume has not been partitioned yet, the Part Size (MB) and the Available Size (MB) are equal. A single logical volume is considered to be a single partition.

Note – Mixing SATA and FC logical drives to create a logical volume is not supported.



As logical drives are added to the logical volume, they are displayed in the LV Definition box

Available Size – displays the total capacity of all disks, which is the total logical volume size

- To create another logical drive to add to the logical volume, click **New LD**.
- Create the logical drive and add it to the logical volume by clicking **Add to LV**. Repeat this step for every logical drive you want to add to the logical volume.
- To create a partition, type the partition size in the **Part Size** field and click **Add Partition**.

To create multiple partitions of the same size, click **Add Partition** as many times as partitions you want to create. You can also type the partition size in the **Part Size** field and multiply (*) it by the number of partitions you want to create, for example 100*128.

As you add partitions, the remaining capacity displayed in **Available Size (MB)** decreases by the amount of the partition size.

- When you have finished adding logical drives to the logical volume, to create another logical volume or an individual logical drive, click **Commit LV**.

When you are finished creating logical volumes and do not want to create an individual logical drive, click **Commit**.

Note – When you have finished creating logical volumes and want to exit the New Configuration window, if you accidentally click Commit LV instead of Commit, you will have to create another logical drive; otherwise, you have to click Cancel and configure the logical volume again.

To add or delete a logical volume to or partition a logical volume in an existing configuration, see [“Updating the Configuration” on page 149](#).

7. **(HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.**

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

8. **(IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206](#).**

Media Scan

A firmware menu option called Media Scan at Power-Up specifies whether media scan runs automatically following a controller power-cycle, reset, or after logical drive initialization. This setting is disabled by default. For more information, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User’s Guide*.

To determine whether or not media scan is running, see the event log. For more information on the event log window, see [“Event Log Window” on page 112](#). For more information about media scan, see [“To Scan Physical Disks for Bad Blocks \(Media Scan\)” on page 132](#).

▼ To Clear a Configuration

If at any time during the configuration process in the New Configuration window you are dissatisfied with the configuration, you can clear it.

1. **Click Clear to remove all physical and logical drives from the display.**
2. **Either click New LD to define a new logical drive, or click Commit.**
3. **When you click Commit, a warning prompt is displayed; click OK.**

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service initializes the entire configuration on the selected array controller.

Note – Host LUNs are automatically mapped after logical drives have completed the initialization process.

▼ To Log Out of the Configuration Level

When you have finished with configuration activities, log back in to the monitoring level of the program.

1. **Choose File → Logout.**
2. **Select Logout to monitoring mode and click OK.**

Host LUN Assignments

For the server to recognize a logical drive/logical volume, it must first be mapped to a host channel/ID. When a logical drive/logical volume is mapped to a host channel/ID, it becomes a logical unit number (LUN). The following section describes how to map a logical drive/logical volume to a host channel and how to remove it.

Note – When logical drives/logical volumes are first created, unless Do Not Map is selected, the host LUNs are automatically mapped after logical drives/logical volumes have completed the initialization process.

Note – Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI arrays and Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI arrays support a maximum of 128 LUN assignments. Sun StorEdge 3510 FC arrays and Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA arrays support a maximum of 1024 LUN assignments (maximum number of LUNs assigned to each host ID is 32).

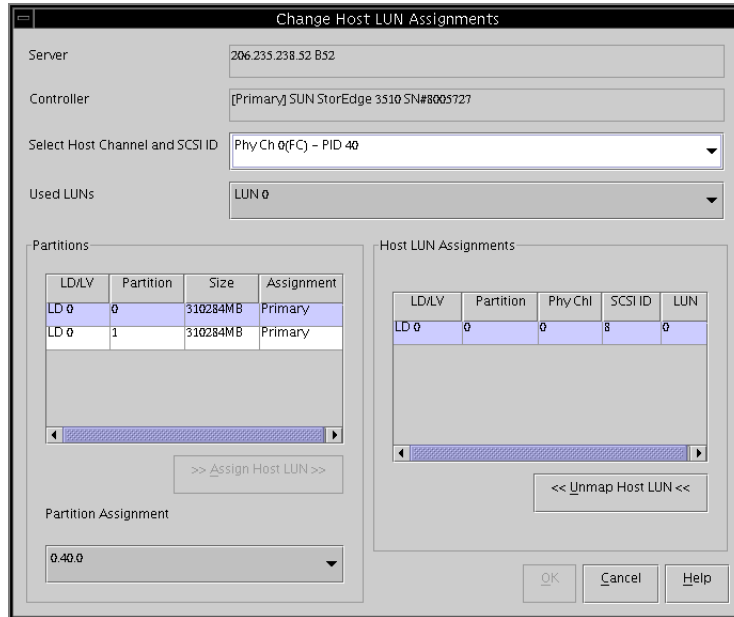
Note – Some versions of operating system software or utilities might not display all mapped LUNs if there is no partition or logical drive mapped to LUN 0. Map a partition or logical drive to LUN 0 if you are in doubt, or refer to your operating system documentation.

▼ To Add or Change (Map) a Host LUN

1. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.

2. Select Change Host LUN Assignments.

The Change Host LUN Assignments window is displayed.



3. From the Select Host Channel and SCSI ID list box, select the channel and ID to which the LUN is to be assigned.

All available logical drives are displayed under Partitions. For your reference, Used LUNs displays a list of LUNs used for a specified channel and Partition Assignment displays a list of channels, IDs, and LUNs to which a partition has been assigned.

4. Select the partition you want to map, and click Assign Host LUN.

To map multiple partitions (up to 32), select the first partition, scroll to the last partition and Shift-click to select everything in between. Then click Assign Host LUN. As a result, Unmap Host LUN becomes active.

5. When finished, click OK to save your changes and to return to the main menu.

Note – In the event that an error message is displayed when mapping a host channel, repeat Steps 1 through 5.

▼ To Delete (Unmap) a Host LUN

1. With the **Change Host LUN Assignments** window displayed, select the LUN to be deleted from the **Host LUN Assignments** field.
2. Click **Unmap Host LUN**.
3. When finished, click **OK** to save your changes and to return to the main menu.

Configuration File

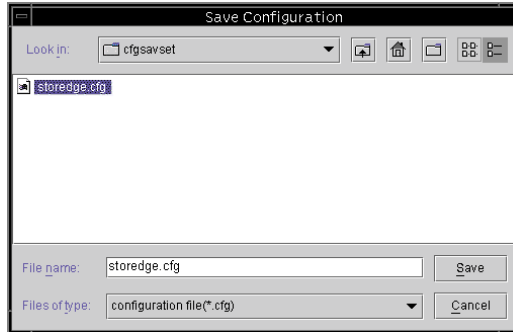
Keep a backup copy of the current configuration on diskette or on an external device other than the array. Even though configuration information is stored on array controllers and on the physical drives attached to them, circumstances such as a fire or a flood can occur, causing damage to both the controller and the drives. A backup copy of the configuration enables you to restore the configuration to a new controller without having to completely reconfigure the storage array.

Always save the array controller configuration to a file whenever you:

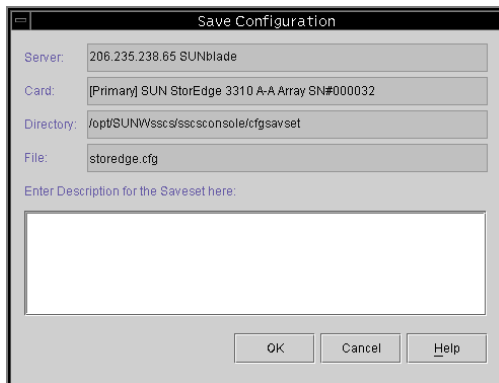
- Install a new storage system enclosure or change the ID for the controller in an existing enclosure
- Replace a controller
- Reconfigure or add logical drives to a controller
- Rebuild the data from a failed drive to a standby drive

▼ To Save a Configuration to a Backup File

1. **Select the controller with the configuration you want to save.**
2. **Choose Configuration → Save Configuration.**
The Save Configuration window is displayed.



3. **If necessary, navigate to the drive and folder where you want the configuration file to be saved.**
Save the file to a diskette or a drive external to the array.
4. **Specify the configuration file name and click Save.**
The Save Configuration window is displayed.



5. **Type a description of the configuration you are saving.**
6. **Click OK.**
The controller configuration information is saved to a `.cfg` file.

Loading the Configuration

If a drive or controller is damaged and needs to be replaced, see [“To Restore a Logical Drive Configuration” on page 140](#), which describes how to load a configuration file and restore a logical drive configuration.

LUN Filtering (FC and SATA Only)

This chapter explains how to create a LUN filter for the Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel array and the Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array to maintain large Fibre Channel networks that share common storage. Topics covered in this chapter include:

- “Overview” on page 65
- “Assigning a LUN Filter” on page 67
 - “To Access the LUN Filter View” on page 67
 - “To Add a New Host Manually” on page 67
 - “To Add an HBA Device Manually” on page 69
 - “To Remove Standard Host Mapping” on page 71
 - “To Assign a LUN Filter” on page 72
 - “To Delete a LUN Filter” on page 74

Overview

An important part of effectively maintaining a storage infrastructure depends on how accessible and secure the data is at all times. With LUN filtering support, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service provides a utility for secure centralized storage access management.

For multiple servers connected to the same FC array, LUN filtering provides a proprietary path from a host (server) to a logical drive and essentially hides or excludes the other connected servers from seeing or accessing the same logical drive. That is, the LUN filter organizes how the FC array devices are accessed and viewed from host devices, and typically maps a FC array device to only one host so that other hosts do not access and use the same FC array device.

LUN filtering also enables multiple logical drives to be mapped to the same LUN, enabling different servers to have their own LUN 0 to boot from, if needed. LUN filtering is also valuable in clarifying mapping when each host bus adapter (HBA) typically sees twice the number of logical drives when viewed through a hub.

Each Fibre Channel device is assigned a unique identifier called a worldwide name (WWN). A WWN is assigned by the IEEE and is similar to a MAC address in IP or a URL on the Internet. These WWNs stay with the device for its lifetime. LUN filtering uses this WWN to specify which server is to have exclusive use of a specific logical drive. From the main menu of the console, an easy drag-and-drop method is used to map each logical drive to a host's Fibre Channel HBA card, identified with a WWN.

In the following example, when you map logical drive (LUN 01) to host channel 0 and select WWN1, server A has a proprietary path to that logical drive. With LUN filtering, the logical drive is visible and accessible to only the HBA device on the host, but not to any other HBA device. All three servers continue to see and access LUN 02 and LUN 03 unless filters are assigned to them.

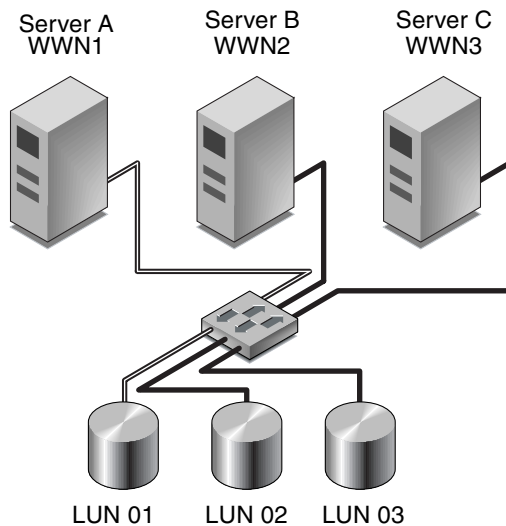


FIGURE 5-1 Example of LUN Filtering


An advantage of LUN filtering is that it enables many more hosts, with multiple OSs, to attach to an array through a common Fibre Channel port and still maintain LUN security.

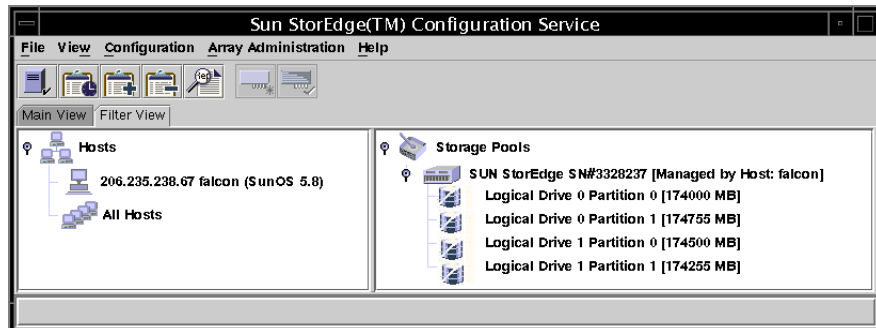
Assigning a LUN Filter

Assigning a LUN filter involves the following steps:

- Accessing the LUN Filter View
- Adding a new host manually (if you do not see the desired host)
- Adding an HBA device manually (if you do not see the desired HBA)
- Removing standard mapping
- Assigning the LUN filter

▼ To Access the LUN Filter View

1. From the main window, click the Filter View tab.
2. Click the container symbol  to expand the device trees for detailed views of the servers (hosts) in the left pane and the array devices in the right pane.



▼ To Add a New Host Manually

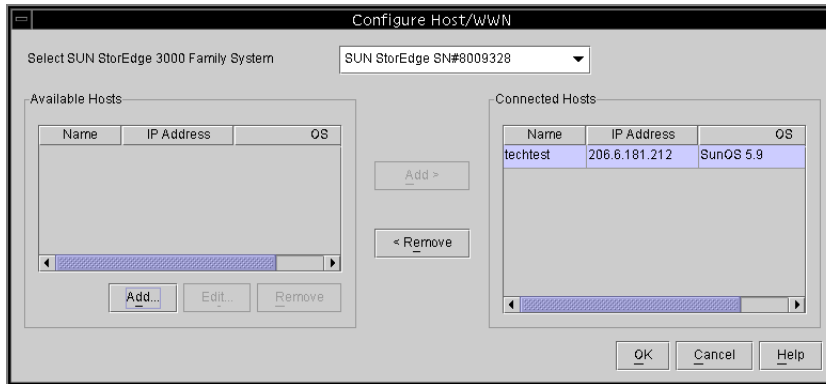
If you do not see the desired host displayed in the left pane (under Hosts), add it manually through the Configure Host/WWN window.

1. From the main window, click the Filter View tab.
2. Choose Configuration → Configure Host/WWN.

Note – If the Configure Host/WWN option is not enabled, select any one of icons in the left pane to enable it.

3. If are not already logged in as `ssconfig` or `ssadmin`, a password prompt is displayed. Type the password and click **OK**.

The Configure Host/WWN window is displayed.



4. Under **Available Hosts**, look for the host.
 - If you see the host, go to Step 9.
 - If you do not see the host, continue with Step 5.
5. Under the **Available Hosts** pane, click **Add**.

The Add/Edit Host window is displayed.
6. Enter the host name, IP address, and the OS, and then click **Add**.

The Add/Edit HBA window is displayed.
7. Enter the adapter name and the appropriate WWN, and then click **OK**.

For details on determining the WWN, see [“Determining Host Worldwide Names \(Fibre Channel and SATA Only\)”](#) on page 239.
8. Click **OK** to close the Add/Edit Host window.
9. Under **Available Hosts**, select the host, and click **Add** to add the host to the **Connected Hosts** list.
10. Click **OK** to close the **Configure Host/WWN** window.

A confirmation message is displayed.
11. Click **Close**.

When you return to the Filter View tab, the new host is available for LUN filtering.

12. (Optional) If you want to map multiple hosts to an array, select **Configuration** → **LUN Filter Properties**, and then choose the array from the **Select Sun StorEdge 3000 Family System** list box.

Select the Hardware Filter and Map to Multiple Hosts check boxes, and then click OK.

Note – If you deselect the Hardware Filter check box, you cannot assign LUN filter mapping; you can only assign a standard map.

▼ To Add an HBA Device Manually

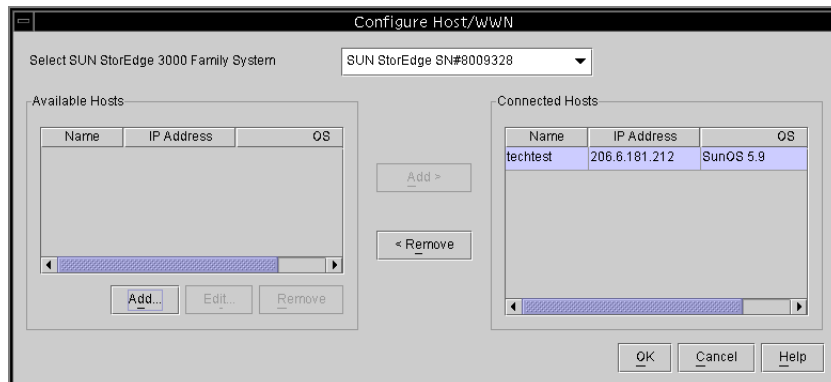
If you do not see the desired HBA device displayed in the left pane (under Hosts), add it manually through the Configure Host/WWN window. You can add up to 64 WWNs per array.

1. Choose **Configuration** → **Configure Host/WWN**.

Note – If the Configure Host/WWN option is not enabled, select any one of icons in the left pane to enable it.

2. If are not already logged in as `ssconfig` or `ssadmin`, a password prompt is displayed. Type the password, and click **OK**.

The Configure Host/WWN window is displayed.



3. Under **Connected Hosts**, select the host that you want to add an HBA device to, and click **Remove**.

4. Under Available Hosts, select the host, and click Edit.

The Add/Edit Host window is displayed.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add/Edit Host". At the top, it displays "SUN StorEdge 3000 Family System" and "SUN StorEdge SN#8009328". Below this, the "Host Info" section contains a "Host Name" field with "techtest", an "IP Address" field with "206.6.181.212", and an "OS" field with "SunOS 5.9". The "HBAs Info" section features a table with two columns: "Name" and "WWN". The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the dialog, there are buttons for "Add...", "Edit...", and "Remove", along with "OK", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons.

5. Click Add.

The Add/Edit HBA window is displayed.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add/Edit HBA". At the top, it displays "SUN StorEdge 3000 Family System" and "SUN StorEdge SN#8009328". Below this, the "Host Name" field contains "techtest". The "HBA Info" section contains an "Adapter Name" field with "pc1@1,2000/JNI,FCE@1" and a "WWN" field with "200000E069E012B6". At the bottom of the dialog, there are buttons for "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".

6. Enter the new Adapter Name and the appropriate WWN, and click OK.

For details on determining the WWN, see [“Determining Host Worldwide Names \(Fibre Channel and SATA Only\)”](#) on page 239.

7. Click OK to close the Add/Edit Host window.

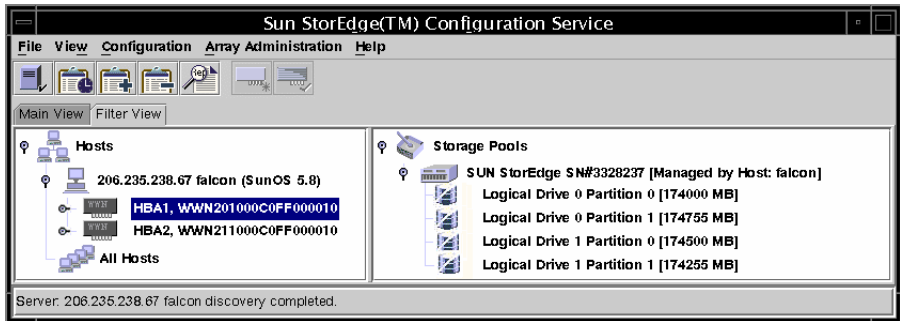
8. Under Available Hosts, select the host, and click Add to move the host back to the Connected Hosts list.

9. Click OK to close the Configure Host/WWN window.


A confirmation message is displayed.

10. Click Close.


When you return to the LUN Filter view, the new HBA device is gray. It is available for LUN filtering.



▼ To Remove Standard Host Mapping


Before you can assign a LUN filter, you have to remove the standard host mapping, (indicated by an M label ) , from the array. Standard mapping enables all hosts to see all standard mapped logical drives. LUN filtering restricts the mapping to specific host(s).

1. From the main window, click the Filter View tab.
2. From the right pane, click each All Hosts item, and drag and drop it to Storage Pools.
3. Click Yes to the warning message.
A confirmation message is displayed.
4. Click Close.

When you return to the Filter View tab, note that the M label  has been removed from the logical drive.

▼ To Assign a LUN Filter

After you remove the standard mapping, you are ready to assign a LUN filter by mapping logical drives to hosts.

1. From the main window, click the **Filter View** tab.
2. Select a logical drive under **Storage Pools**, and drag and drop it to the appropriate HBA device () under **Hosts**.

A warning message is displayed.

Note – If the HBA device connected to the array is not known, drag and drop the logical drive to the host (server) in the left pane. The program prompts you to filter the array for each HBA device in the host. When this happens, the logical drive is visible to the HBA device on the host, but it is not visible (or accessible) to any other HBA device.

3. Click **Yes**.

The Specify Map Information window is displayed. Note that the program automatically maps the logical drive to the first HBA device listed in the host if there is more than one HBA device.



4. Assign the logical drive to a primary or secondary controller with the desired channels and LUN ID numbers, and then click **OK**.

A confirmation message is displayed.

5. Click **Close**.

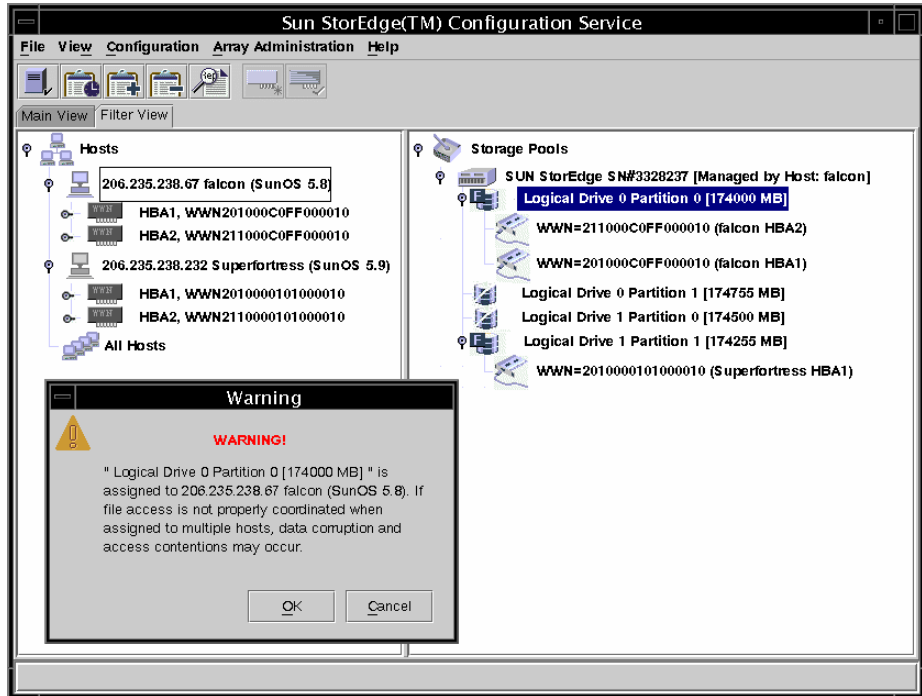
The assignment of the primary controller or secondary controller to an HBA card is selected for the initial LUN filter assignment, and cannot be changed unless you delete the LUN filter assignment and start over.

To apply a LUN filter to a second host for one array, repeat the steps in [“To Add an HBA Device Manually”](#) on page 69 and [“To Assign a LUN Filter”](#) on page 72.

In the following example, the Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel device has LUN filters (note the letter F for filter) to two separate hosts.



Caution – Because data corruption can occur, a warning message is displayed if two users access the same logical drive at the same time. This is a characteristic of some host operating systems. Click Yes to add the additional host.



▼ To Delete a LUN Filter

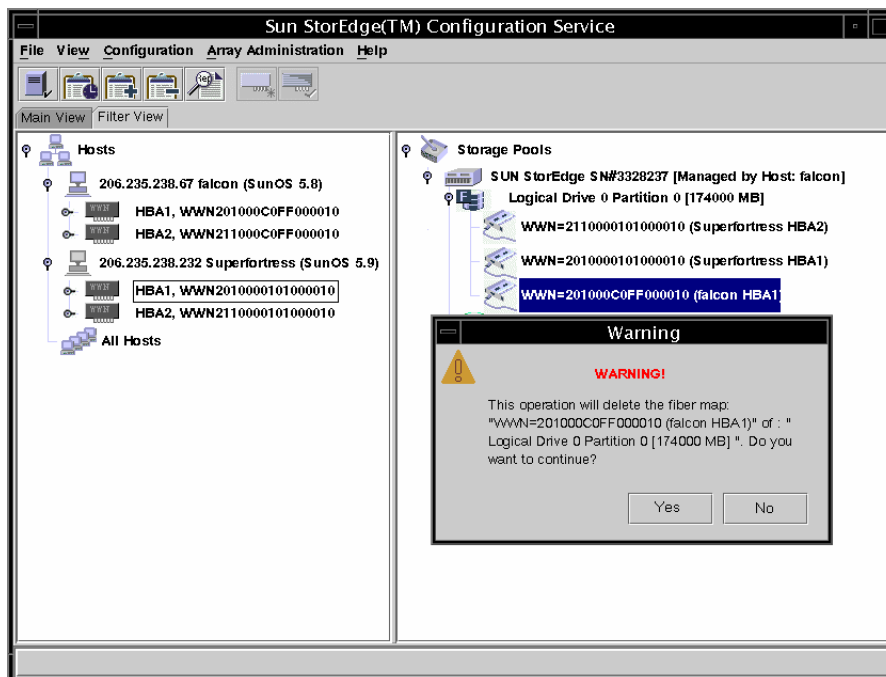
1. From the main window, click the Filter View tab.
2. From the right pane, select the associated WWN, and drag and drop it to Storage Pools.

A warning message is displayed.

3. Click Yes.

A confirmation message is displayed.

4. Click Close.



Monitoring the Array





This chapter explains how to monitor the array using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service. It describes the main window and the component view windows that are available when an icon is double-clicked in the main window. It also explains how the Event Log works and how to use the reporting function. It is organized into the following sections:

- [“The Main Window” on page 76](#)
- [“Viewing Detailed Device Information” on page 83](#)
- [“Event Log” on page 109](#)
- [“Save Report” on page 114](#)
- [“View Report” on page 117](#)
- [“In-Band and Out-of-Band Storage Management” on page 117](#)
- [“Managing Storage Through the Web” on page 123](#)

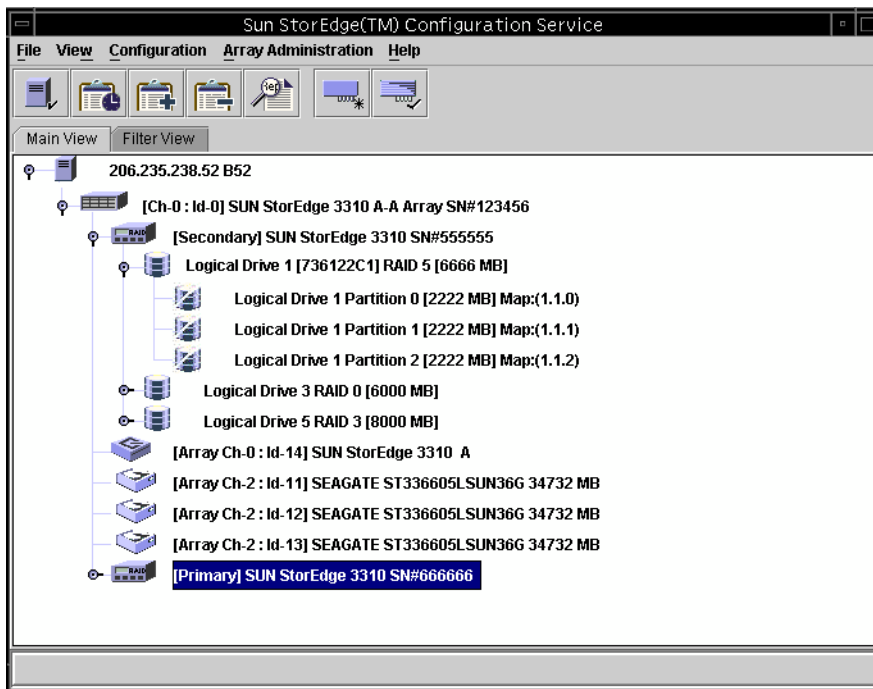
Note – Sun StorEdge Configuration Service can monitor and manage up to 32 arrays at one time. However, console response time can decrease as the number of arrays increases.

The Main Window

The main window provides *status at a glance* for all array devices. It indicates the status of the devices and logical drives connected to servers monitored by the console. The devices include array controllers, disk storage enclosures, physical disk drives, and other SCSI devices.

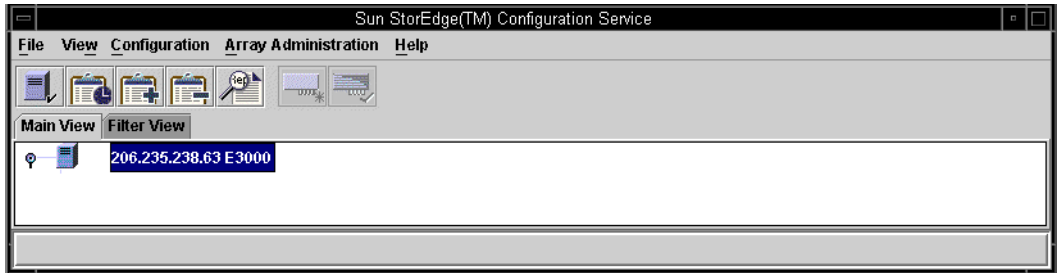
This window's tree structure offers detail for all devices connected to each server. The  or  container symbol at the left side of the tree indicates whether the display of devices is expanded or collapsed. The  container symbol means that you can click to display more devices. The  container symbol indicates that all devices at and below that level are shown.

The following figure shows an example of the expanded view of the main window. See ["To Verify Storage Configurations" on page 27](#) for a description of typical device icons displayed for a configured array.



Note – The SN# represents the unique ID of the array.

The following figure shows an example of a collapsed view.





For more information, you can double-click an icon to open a component view window. The component views are covered later in this chapter.

Device Status

Another feature of the main window is that device status is color-coded and symbol-coded so that it is easy to identify when a device is in a state that requires attention. The status is propagated along the device tree, enabling you to trace a failure down to the device level. See [TABLE 6-1](#) for device status color and symbol descriptions.

TABLE 6-1 Device Color and Symbol Status

Color	Symbol	Status
Purple	None	The group, server, or device is online.
White	None	The user has not logged into this server.
Yellow		One or more components of this group or server are not working, but the array is still functional. See “Degraded State” on page 78 for further details.
Red		One or more components of this group or server are not working, which has placed the device in a critical state. See “Critical State” on page 78 for further details.

Degraded State

Reasons for which a device might be placed in a degraded state include but are not limited to the following:

- Depending on the size of the logical drive and the number of physical drives it contains, a logical drive that has one or more failed physical drives can be operating in a degraded state. See [“View Logical Drive” on page 93](#) to determine the status of the logical drive and the status of the physical drives that make up the logical drive.
- If one or more of the environmental components, including the power supplies, fans, and temperature is not working, but the array is still functional, the enclosure, array, and server icons indicate a degraded state. See [“View Enclosure” on page 95](#) for more information.
- If the controller shuts down because the option to shut down the controller if the temperature exceeds the threshold limits has been enabled, the controller is operating in a degraded state. See [“Peripheral Tab” on page 195](#) for more information.
- For the Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array or Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array, a degraded state might indicate that the battery is going to expire in 21 days, or that the in-service date has not been set for a replacement battery. See [“Battery Information” on page 103](#) for general battery information, and see [“To Verify the In-Service Date When Replacing a Battery” on page 105](#) for information about the in-service date. Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family FRU Installation Guide* for details on installing a replacement battery.

Critical State

Reasons for which a device might be placed in a critical state include but are not limited to the following:

- Depending on the size of the logical drive and the number of physical drives it contains, a logical drive that has one or more failed physical drives can be operating in a critical state. See [“View Logical Drive” on page 93](#) to determine the status of the logical drive and the status of the physical drives that make up the logical drive.
- If two or more of the environmental components, including power supplies, fans, and temperature is not working, for example, three fans fail or two power supplies fail, the enclosure, array, and server icons indicate a critical state. See [“View Enclosure” on page 95](#) for more information.
- If a controller device exceeds or does not meet the threshold range that was set using the firmware application, the controller icon indicates a critical state. See [“To View Environmental Status for the Controller” on page 197](#) for more information.

- For the Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array or Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array, a degraded state might indicate that the battery has expired. See [“Battery Information” on page 103](#) for more information about the battery.

Device Capacities

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service windows often present the capacity of devices such as logical drives. All device capacity is displayed in powers of 1024.

- 1 Kbyte = 1024 bytes
- 1 Mbyte = 1024 Kbyte = 1,048,576 bytes
- 1 Gbyte = 1024 Mbyte = 1,073,741,824 bytes
- 1 Tbyte = 1024 Gbyte = 1,099,511,627,776 bytes

Online Help


To access online help, choose Help → Contents. The online help is in HTML format and depending on the OS, can be run through Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator™. It includes information about major functions within the program.

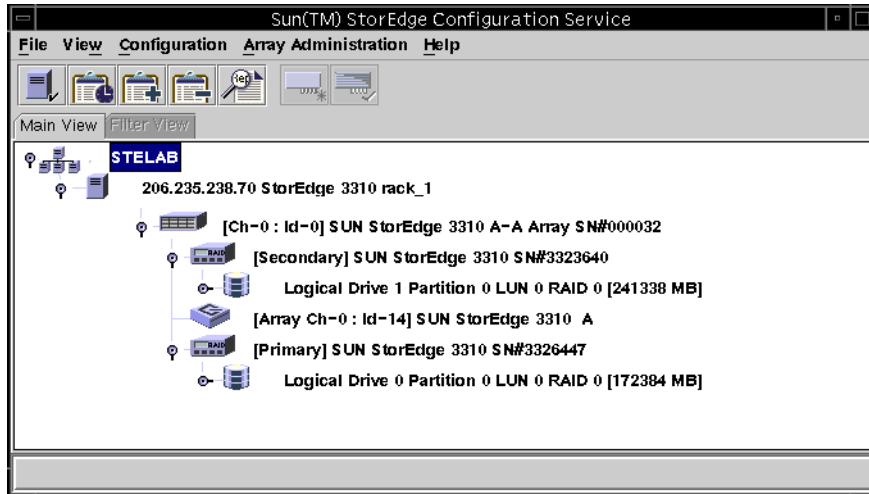
Tree View of Product Configurations

For each server (or group of servers), devices in the tree view are arranged in a hierarchical order with the server (or group) at the top, followed by the array controllers. How the remaining devices — logical drives, physical drives, and enclosures — are shown might vary slightly, depending on which array and controller are being displayed. This section provides window views that might be depicted in the tree view.

Groups

A *group* is a logical collection of servers within the device tree. This new data object enables multiple servers to be contained under a single category.

The group object  looks and behaves like all tree objects. It has an iconic representation and generally assumes the status of its servers. The following figure shows the group icon expanded to show the subordinate or underlying server objects.



A group is a new data object that enables multiple servers to be contained under a single category. Groups are similar in concept to domains. They enable you to organize servers. Instead of a linear tree of all the managed servers, you can organize the servers into like sets or groups.

Groups are color-coded and symbol-coded similarly to servers. States with their corresponding colors have the following order of precedence:

- Critical – Red (the highest)
- Nonresponding – Gray
- Degraded – Yellow
- Optimal – Purple
- Not logged into – White

A server icon assumes the color of the highest state of any of its storage system. Likewise, a group icon takes on the highest state of any of its servers, with the following exceptions involving non responding or unlogged servers.

When a group icon is disabled (inactive), it indicates that all the servers attached to that group are not responding; if any number less than all of the servers in the group is not responding, the group icon appears red, representing a critical state. For example, if there are four servers in the group and three or fewer servers are not responding, the group icon is color-coded red.

When a group icon is color-coded white (not logged in), it indicates that one or more servers within that group have not yet been fully configured, or could represent a period of status transition. TABLE 6-2 gives an example of the different color coding of a two-server group.

TABLE 6-2 Two-Server Group Colors

Server 1 Icon Color	Server 2 Icon Color	Group Icon Color
Gray	Gray	Gray (not responding)
Gray	Yellow, Red, Purple, or White	Red (critical)
White	White	White (not logged into)
White	Yellow	Yellow (degraded)
White	Red	Red (critical)
White	Purple	Purple (optimal)
Red	Any Color	Red (critical)
Yellow	Yellow or Purple	Yellow (degraded)
Purple	Purple	Purple (optimal)

Groups are not required. You can configure the program for no groups and fifteen servers, for example, or for one group with ten servers underneath, with an additional five at the top level. The program enables any combination.

The number of groups permitted and the number of servers within a group is limited only by available system memory. If a server is a member of a group and a user deletes that group from the group list box, servers are reassigned in that group to the no group category. The tree is remapped in the main window.

The Monitoring Process

The console monitors storage devices on a network by communicating with an agent on the servers.

When the program is started, the console software begins by establishing contact with the agent on each managed server if Auto Discovery was specified when the server was configured. If Auto Discovery was not specified, you have to double-click each server and provide a password to start the discovery process for that server.

Establishing a TCP/IP connection between the console and the agent on each server and receiving back inventory information can take several minutes, depending on the complexity of the network. When this is occurring, the server icon in the main window displays a satellite dish icon on its right side. Once the inventory is refreshed, the satellite dish symbol is replaced by an active server symbol.

The agent on each server does a periodic scan of its inventory to check for changes. If there is a change, the agent sends an event to the console. Depending on the event, the console might request the inventory from that server's last scan to use for updating the representation of the server as displayed on the main window. During this process, the satellite dish icon is attached to the server icon, and you cannot do any configuration and array activity commands on that server until the refresh process is completed and the console main window is updated.

When the program is running and the server agent and console are connected, the agent pings or transmits a periodic signal to the console to verify the server's status. If the console does not receive a certain number of consecutive responses (handshakes) from the agent, the console marks the server as offline and disconnects from the server. The server's icon is made inactive and adjacently marked with a question mark symbol.

If a nonactive server was originally made active through the Auto Discovery function, the console periodically tries to reestablish server communications.

Occasionally, you might want to have an inventory performed on a server between the periodic status scans. To do this, double-click the server's icon to display the Server View window, and then click Rescan in that window.

Auto Discovery Options

If you have selected the Auto Discovery option (during the process of adding servers to the Managed Servers list, see [“Select or Deselect Automatic Discovery of servers:” on page 14](#)), the program automatically scans and performs an inventory on these servers. You are not required to provide a monitoring password to retrieve information provided by the program. Depending on the complexity of the network and the number of servers, it can take several minutes for the discovery process to finish.

However, if you choose not to use the Auto Discovery option on startup, the servers' icons are white, indicating that there is currently no information available for these servers. In this case, you need to double-click each server icon and specify the appropriate monitoring password.

You can also choose File → Login. Once the password is specified for a server, the discovery process begins to perform an inventory on the selected server.

Note – If you need a very secure environment where access to server inventory data is restricted, select No for Auto Discovery (see [“Select or Deselect Automatic Discovery of servers:” on page 14](#)).

Viewing Detailed Device Information


Sun StorEdge Configuration Service provides detailed information about each agent or server and about the array devices that are connected to it. The fields on each of these views vary, depending on the capabilities of the disk controller.

Except for Save Report and View Report, which are located under the File menu, the commands and windows described in this section are accessed through the View menu.

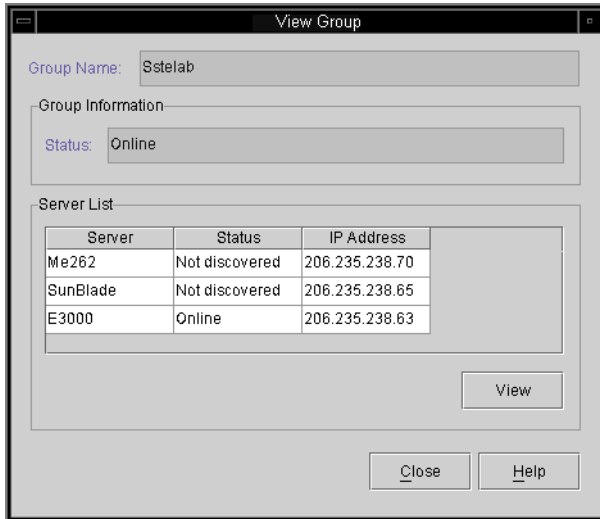
- [View Group](#)
- [View Server](#)
- [View HBA Card](#)
- [View Controller](#)
- [View Logical Drive](#)
- [View Physical Drive](#)
- [View Enclosure](#)
- [View FRU](#)
- [Array Administration Progress](#)
- [Agent Options Management](#)
- [Save Report](#)
- [View Report](#)

View Group

View Group displays the servers that make up the group that is selected in the main window.

To access View Group, double-click the group icon  in the main window or select the group icon and choose View → View Group.


The Server List displays all servers that are attached to the specified group.

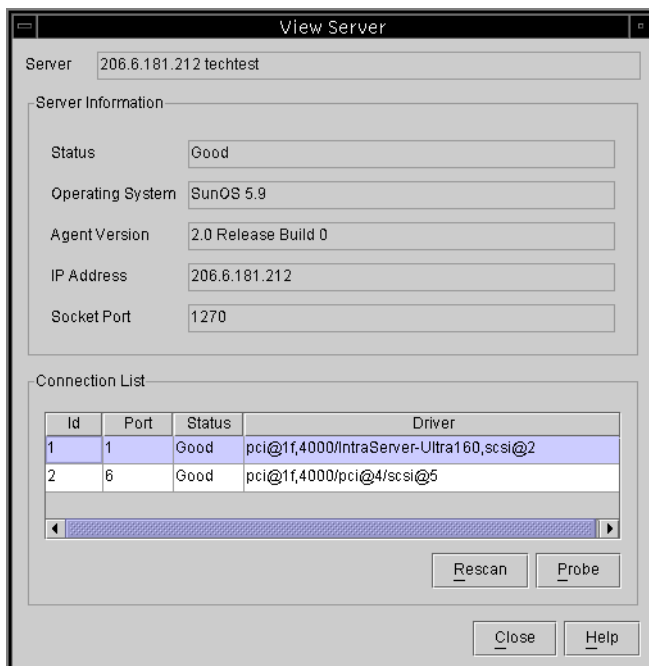


To view more information about any of the servers listed, select the appropriate status record in the list and click View, or double-click the status record. A window describing the corresponding server is displayed.

View Server

View Server displays the characteristics of the server that is selected in the main window.

To access View Server, double-click the server icon  in the main window or select the server icon and choose View → View Server.



Part of the TCP/IP network, the socket port makes a connection between the server and the client.


- Connection List – Displays host adapters and array controllers that are installed in or connected to the specified server.

Note – Dual-port HBAs are displayed as separate entries because they have separate channels to which devices can be connected.

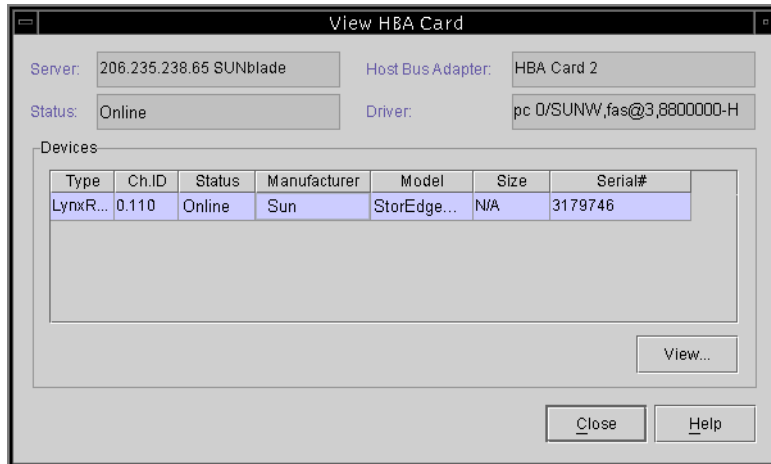
- Rescan – Sends a command to the selected server to rescan existing inventory and refresh the console. Normally, each managed server performs a periodic scan of its inventory and updates the console if there is a change. If you want to perform a diagnostic of all assigned devices, click Rescan; selecting this button essentially circumvents the periodic and automatic status updates.
- Probe – Sends a command to the selected server to probe for new inventory (for example, RAID controllers, JBODs, and expansion units). Whenever a new device has been added, or a device name has changed and you want it to be displayed in the main window tree view immediately, click Probe.

View HBA Card

View HBA Card displays the characteristics of the host bus adapter (HBA) card that is selected in the main Sun StorEdge Configuration Service window. It is only displayed when using out-of-band management.


To access View HBA Card, double-click the host adapter icon  in the main Sun StorEdge Configuration Service window or select the HBA icon and select View → View HBA Card.

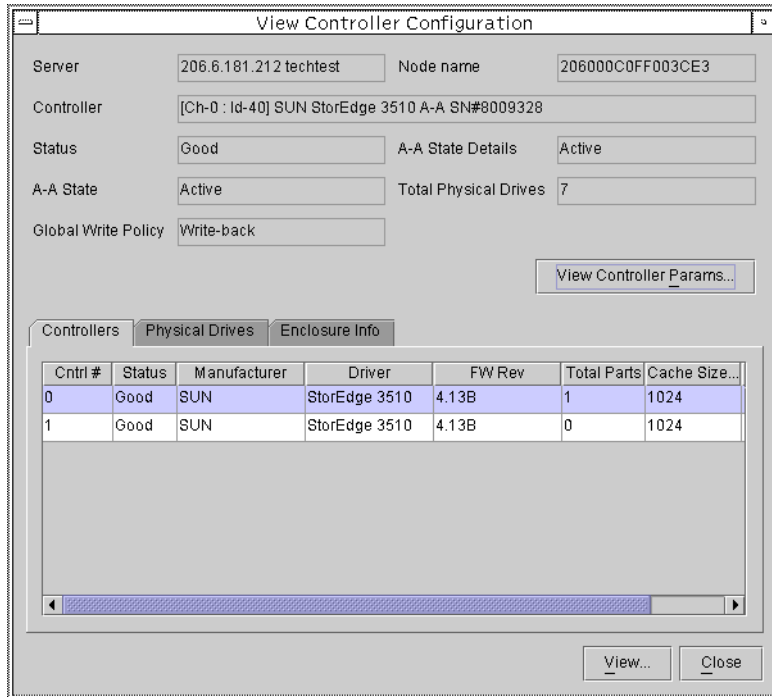
View HBA Card displays the status of the host adapter card and its device driver and provides a list of the devices connected to the adapter. Sun StorEdge Configuration Service channels start with number 0. The server listed at the top of the window is the server in which the HBA is installed.



View Controller


View Controller displays the components that make up the array.

To access View Controller, double-click the array icon  in the main window, or select it and choose View → View Controller. The View Controller Configuration window is displayed.




The tabs at the bottom section of the window provide detailed information about the RAID controller's LUNs, on the physical drives attached to it, on the enclosure where the controller is located, and on the configuration of the peripherals. To bring the information for another tab into view, click the tab.

Controllers Tab

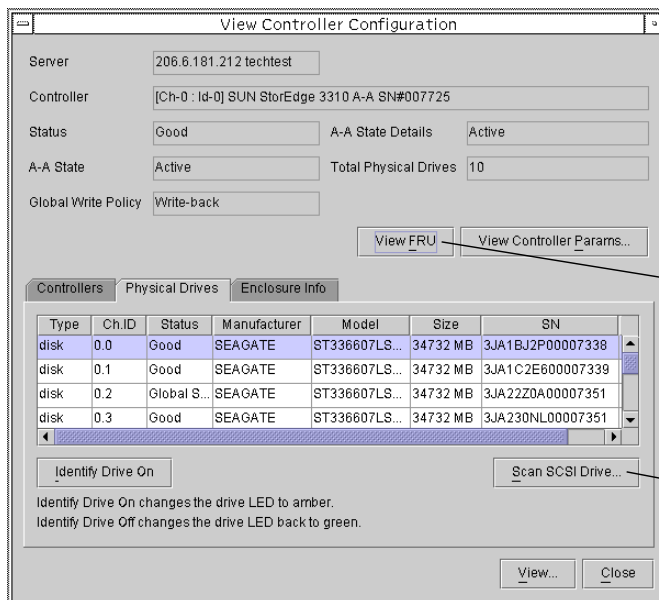
To access this window, double-click the array icon  in the main window, or select it and choose View → View Controller. Then click the Controller tab.

The Controller tab lists the controllers. To view more information about the controllers, double-click the controller or select the controller and click View. Depending on whether the controller is primary or secondary, the View Primary or View Secondary Controller Configuration window is displayed. See [“View Primary/Secondary Controller Configuration” on page 90.](#)

Physical Drives Tab

To access this window, double-click the array icon  in the main window, or select it and choose View → View Controller, and then click the Physical Drives tab.

The following example shows the View Controller Configuration window with the Physical Drives tab displayed.



View FRU is not displayed for the Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel array.

Scan SCSI Drive is not displayed for the Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel array.

The Physical Drives tab lists the physical drives associated with the array. To see details about any of the physical drives listed, double-click the drive or select the drive and click View. The View Physical Drive window is displayed. For more information about View Physical Drive, see [“View Physical Drive” on page 94.](#)



Scan SCSI Drive

For the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array and the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array, if a drive fails, the Scan SCSI Drive button is displayed. A SCSI hard drive can be scanned in and made available without having to shut down the array.

Identify Drive On

To identify a single physical drive, for example, if you are receiving errors on a specific channel ID and you need to determine which drive is causing the errors, select the drive from the list, and click Identify Drive On. The selected drive's LED changes to amber, and the button toggles to Identify Drive Off. Click Identify Drive Off to change the drive's LED back to green.

Enclosure Info Tab

To access this window, either double-click the enclosure icon  in the main window, or select the array icon  and choose View → View Controller. Select the Enclosure Info tab. Select an enclosure and click View.

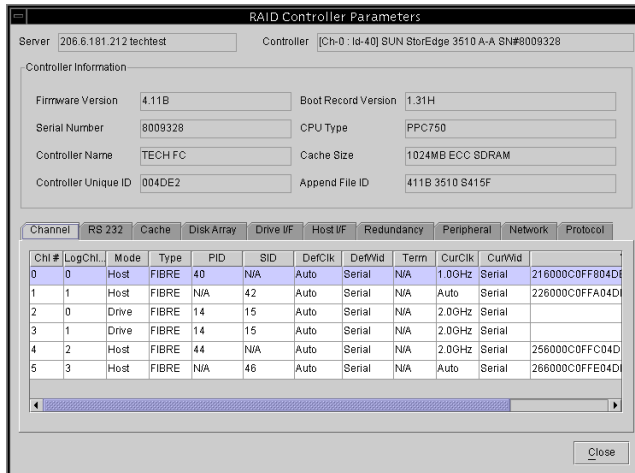
The information in the Enclosure Info tab includes the status of the power supplies, fans, battery, and the enclosure temperature. For more information about View Enclosure, see [“View Enclosure” on page 95](#).

View FRU

For the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array only, to display the field-replaceable unit identification (FRU ID) information for the array, click View FRU. For example FRU ID information, see [“View FRU” on page 107](#).

View Controller Parameters

Click View Controller Parameters to view detailed information about channels, RS 232, cache, disk array, drive I/F, host I/F, redundancy, peripheral devices, network parameters, and supported protocols. To view the information, click the tab that corresponds to the item you want to view. To change controller parameters, see [“To Change Controller Parameters” on page 179.](#)



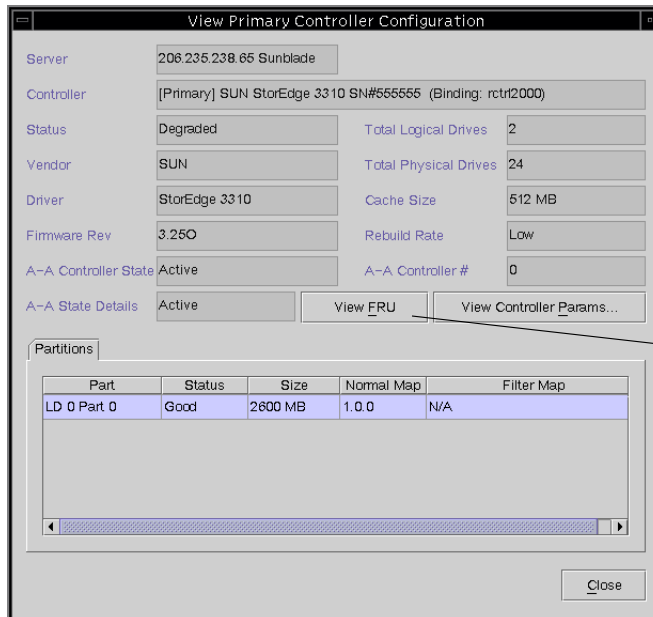
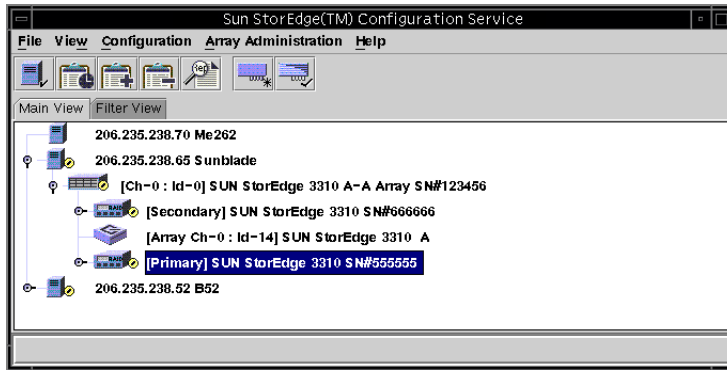
Channel Parameters

Each controller has an RS-232 port and an Ethernet port. This architecture ensures continuous communication should one controller fail. Since the communication is established to only one controller at a time (even when the array is in redundant mode), the CurClk and CurWid parameters are displayed for the primary controller. Therefore, if a user maps one LUN to the primary controller and another LUN to a secondary controller, only the established connection to the primary controller is displayed through the serial and Ethernet port menu. As a result, if a primary ID is not mapped to a channel, and a secondary ID is mapped, “Async” is displayed in the CurClk field.

View Primary/Secondary Controller Configuration

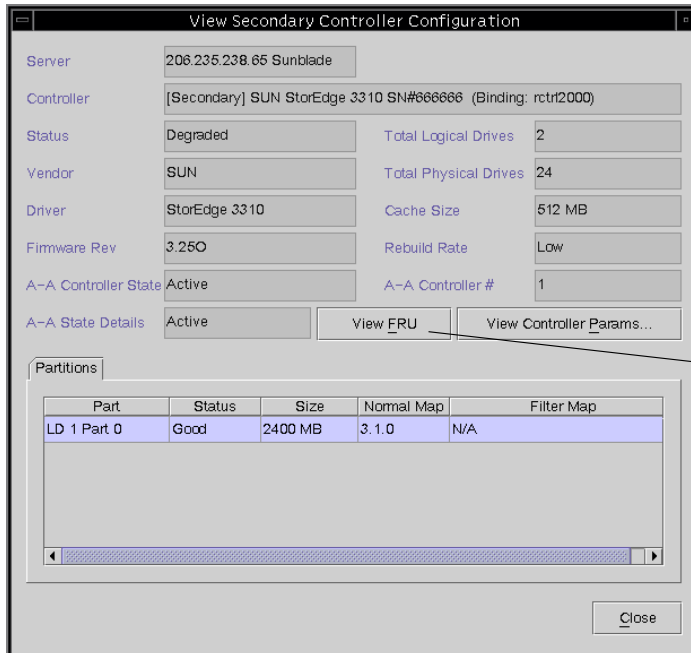
View Primary and View Secondary Controller Configuration windows display the characteristics of the controller that is selected in the main window. To display the primary controller characteristics, select the primary controller from the main window and choose View → View Controller, or double-click the primary controller.

The following two examples show the primary controller.



View FRU is not displayed for the Sun StorEdge 3310 Fibre Channel array.

The following two examples show the secondary controller.




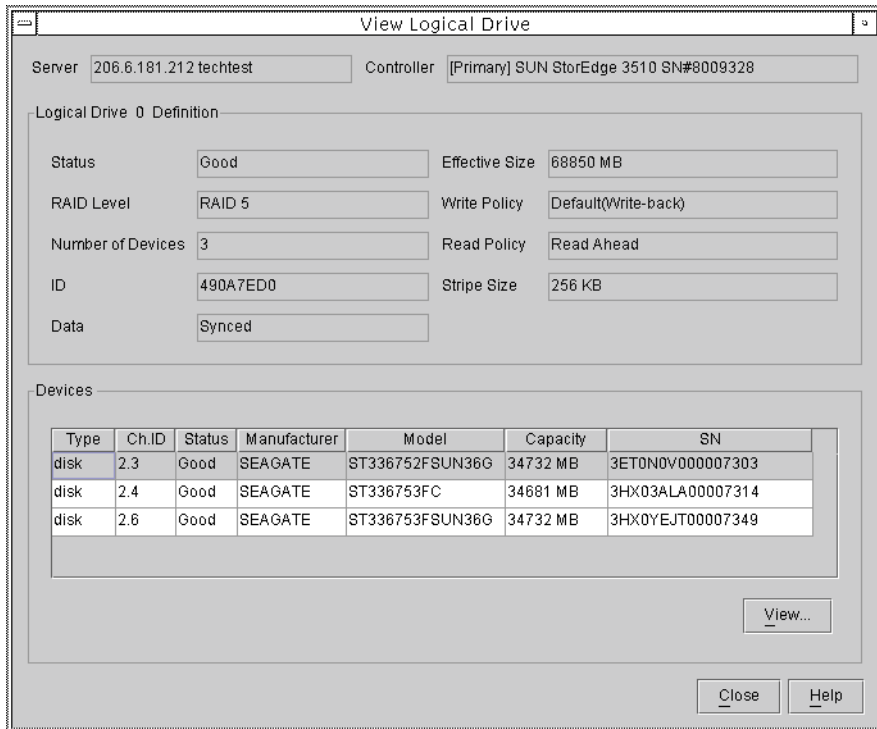
View FRU is not displayed for the Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel array.

View Logical Drive

View Logical Drive displays the characteristics of the logical drive that is selected in the main window.


To access this view window, use one of the following methods.

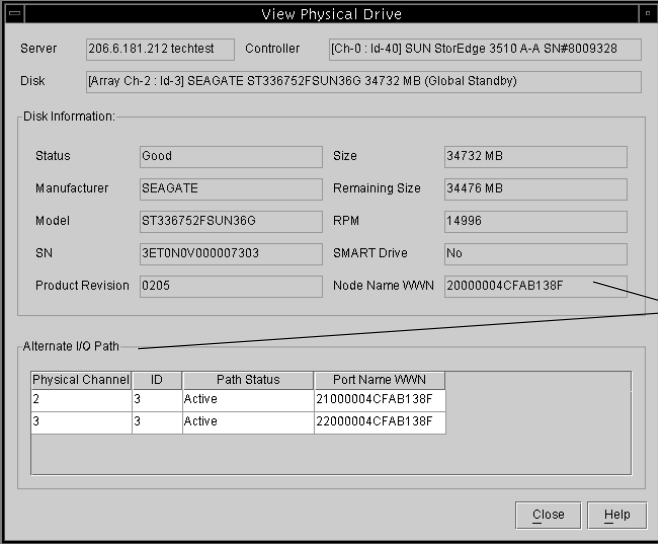
- Double-click the logical drive icon  in the main window.
- Select the logical drive icon and choose View → View Logical Drive.



For more information about any of the disk drives listed, either double-click the drive's status record, or select the drive and click View. The View Physical Drive window is displayed.

View Physical Drive

View → View Physical Drive presents the characteristics of the selected physical drive. You can access it by double-clicking the physical device  in the main window, or by selecting the device and choosing View → View Physical Drive.



Physical Channel	ID	Path Status	Port Name WWN
2	3	Active	21000004CFAB138F
3	3	Active	22000004CFAB138F


Node Name WWN and Alternate I/O Path are not displayed for the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array or the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array.

- Remaining Size – Remaining unused capacity when part of a physical drive's capacity has been used in one or more logical drives.
- RPM – The revolutions per minute of the physical drive
- SMART Drive – Indicates whether the drive has predictive failure capability
- Node Name WWN (FC and SATA only) – Uniquely identifies the physical drive
- Alternate I/O Path (FC and SATA only) – Reports the status of the available paths between the controller and the physical drives. A status of Active for both drives indicates that there is a redundant path between the controller and the physical drives.

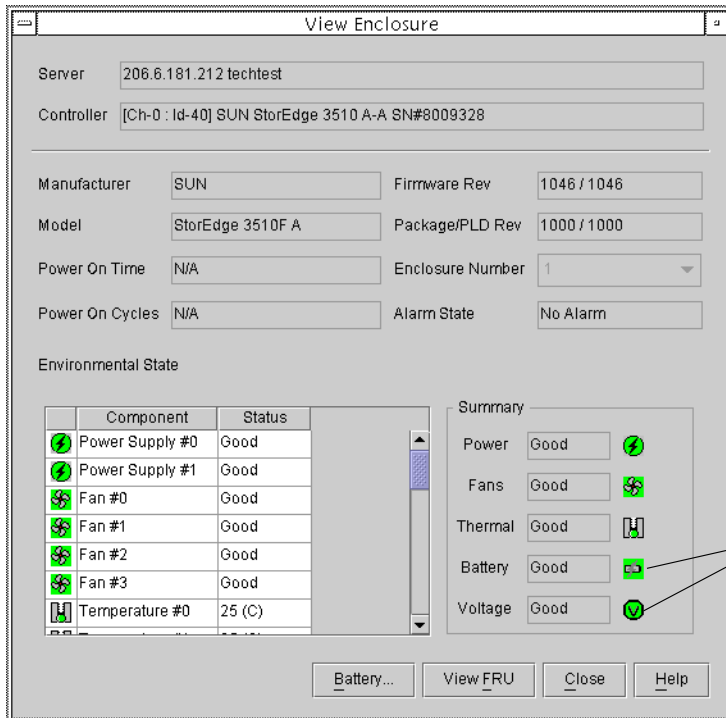
View Enclosure

The View Enclosure window displays the component and alarm characteristics of an enclosure that is selected in the main window. For the Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array, View Enclosure also contains SATA MUX and SATA Router information.

For SCSI, the enclosure is identified by the model name Sun StorEdge 3310 A or Sun StorEdge 3320 A; Id is always 14 or 15, or Sun StorEdge 3120 A; Id depends on the ID switch position. For Fibre Channel or SATA, the enclosure is identified by the model name Sun StorEdge 3510F A or Sun StorEdge 3511F A; Id is always the last Id within the enclosure in which the SES is contained. The model name is followed by an A or D. A indicates a RAID array unit. D indicates a JBOD.

To view the enclosure, either double-click the enclosure icon  of the array you want to view, or select the enclosure icon and choose View → View Enclosure.

The upper two sections of the window identify the enclosure and provide related information. Note that when there are multiple enclosures, you can use the Enclosure Number list box to reflect another enclosure attached to the same controller.



Battery and voltage status are not displayed for the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array, or the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array.

Alarm State applies only if you have an array with a SCSI Accessed Fault-Tolerant Enclosure (SAF-TE) (SCSI) or SCSI Enclosure Services (SES) (Fibre Channel or SATA) card.

- If the Alarm State field displays `Alarm!`, it means that there is an alarm caused by a failure of a drive, fan, power supply, or battery, or by an abnormal temperature in the enclosure. The audible alarm on the box sounds.
- For the program to continue monitoring after this alarm condition starts, you must push the Reset button on the right ear of the array.



Note – Controller events can also cause an audible alarm. Pushing the Reset button has no effect on audible alarms caused by a controller event. See [“To Mute the Controller Beeper” on page 201](#) for information about muting the beeper.

See [“Environmental State” on page 96](#) for information on power supply, fan, voltage, and temperature sensor locations. For the Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array or Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array, to display battery information, click Battery and see [“Battery Information” on page 103](#). To display the FRU IDs and information for all FRUs in the array, click View FRU and see [“View FRU” on page 107](#).

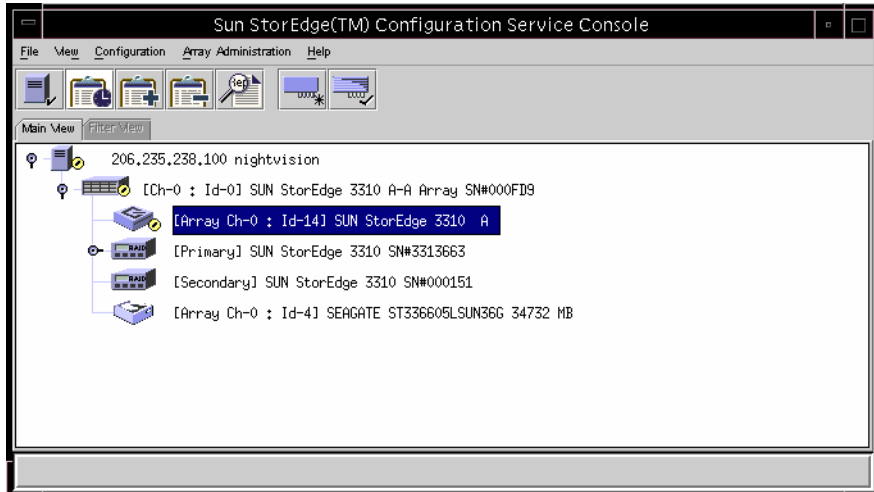
Environmental State

The Environmental State section of the View Enclosure window reports the status of chassis components, including power supplies, fans, and temperature. For the Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array and the Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array, the status of the array’s voltage is also displayed. It provides an overall environmental status of the chassis as well as the status of the individual components. (For environmental status of the controller, see [“To View Environmental Status for the Controller” on page 197](#).)

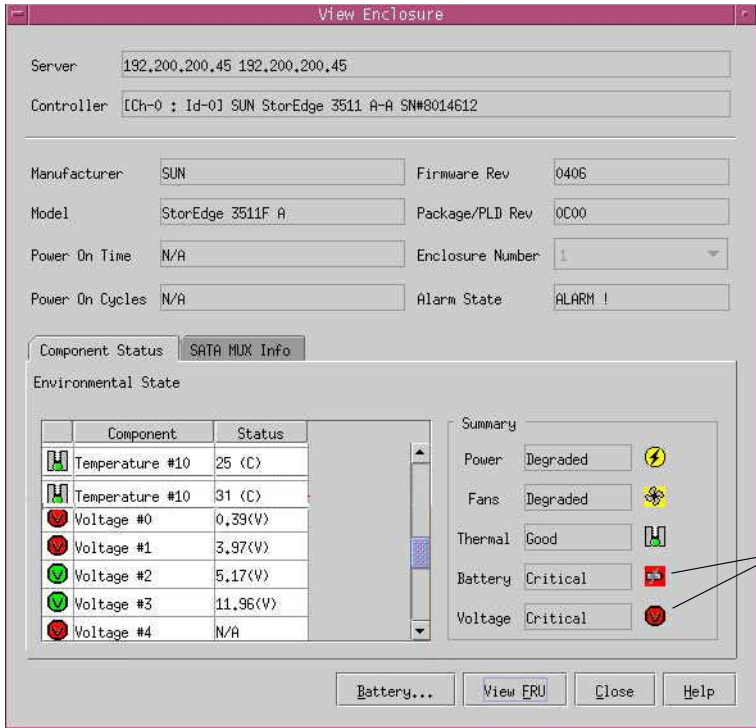
The View Enclosure window specifies the SCSI Accessed Fault-Tolerant Enclosure (SAF-TE) firmware revision for SCSI arrays and the SCSI Enclosure Services (SES) firmware revision for FC and SATA arrays in the Firmware Rev field. Located on the I/O module, the SAF-TE and SES processors monitor environmental conditions.

If one or more of the environmental components is not working, but the array is still functional, the enclosure, array, and server icons in the main window display a yellow (degraded) device status symbol . If the result of one or more components not working places the array in a critical state, the enclosure, array, and server icons in the main window display a red (critical) device status symbol . The device status symbol corresponds to the overall environmental status that is displayed in the Summary section of the View Enclosure window.

The Component/Status list reports the status of individual components, which might not always correspond to the overall status of the array. For example, if power supply #0 is pulled from the array, the yellow device symbol for degraded is displayed in the main window because the array is still functioning using power supply #1.



As shown in the following example View Enclosure window, under Summary, the overall status for Power also specifies Degraded. Under the individual component status, however, Power Supply #0 displays a status of Critical. Because Fan #0 is located in Power Supply #0, it also displays a status of Critical.



Battery and voltage status are not displayed for the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array, Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array, or the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array.

Power Supply and Fan Location

The following illustrations identify the location of the power supplies and fans in the Sun StorEdge 3000 family arrays. For power supply and fan location for the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array, see [“Monitoring JBODs” on page 223](#).

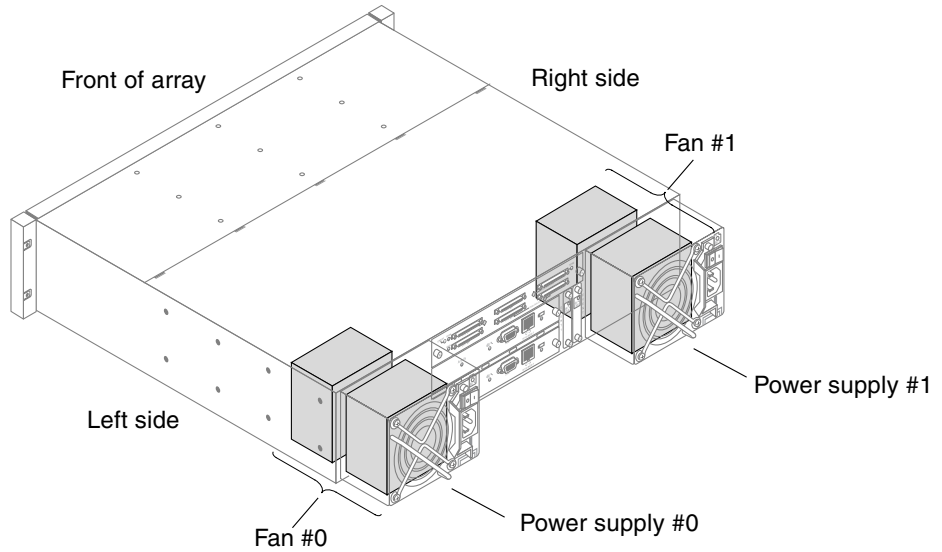


FIGURE 6-1 Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI Array and Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI Array Power Supply and Fan Location

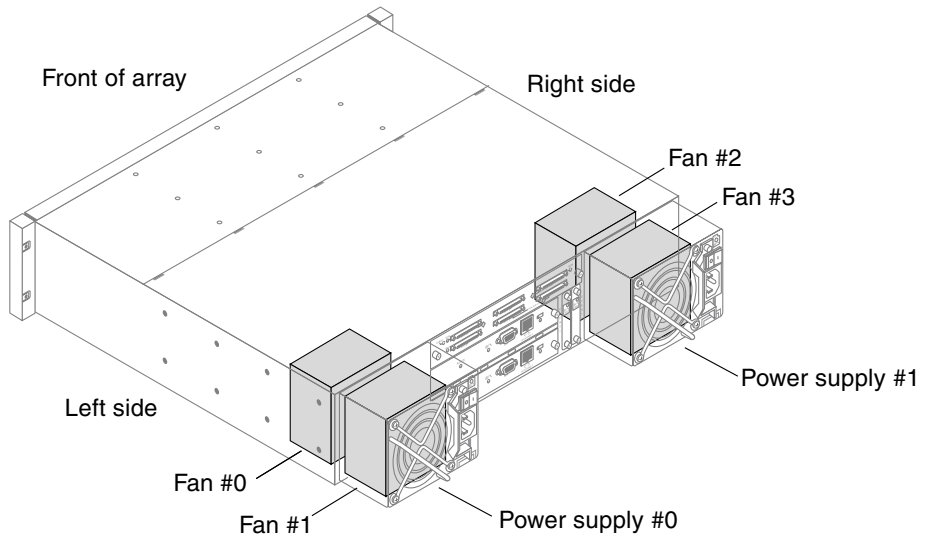


FIGURE 6-2 Sun StorEdge 3510 FC Array and Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA Array Power Supply and Fan Location

SAF-TE and SES Temperature Sensor Locations

Monitoring temperature at different points within the array is one of the most important SAF-TE/SES functions. High temperatures can cause significant damage if they go unnoticed. There are a number of different sensors at key points in the enclosure. The following tables show the location of each of those sensors, which corresponds to the Temperature # displayed in the View Enclosure Component/Status list. For the temperature sensor locations for the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array, see [“Monitoring JBODs” on page 223](#).

TABLE 6-3 Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI Array and Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI Array SAF-TE Temperature Sensor Locations

Temperature ID	Location
0	Port A drive midplane temperature sensor #1
1	Port A drive midplane temperature sensor #2
2	Port A power supply temperature #1 (power supply #0)
3	Port B EMU temperature #1 (left module as seen from back)
4	Port B EMU temperature #2 (right module as seen from back)
5	Port B drive midplane temperature #3
6	Port B power supply temperature #2 (Power supply #1)

TABLE 6-4 Sun StorEdge 3510 FC Array and Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA Array SES Temperature Sensor Locations

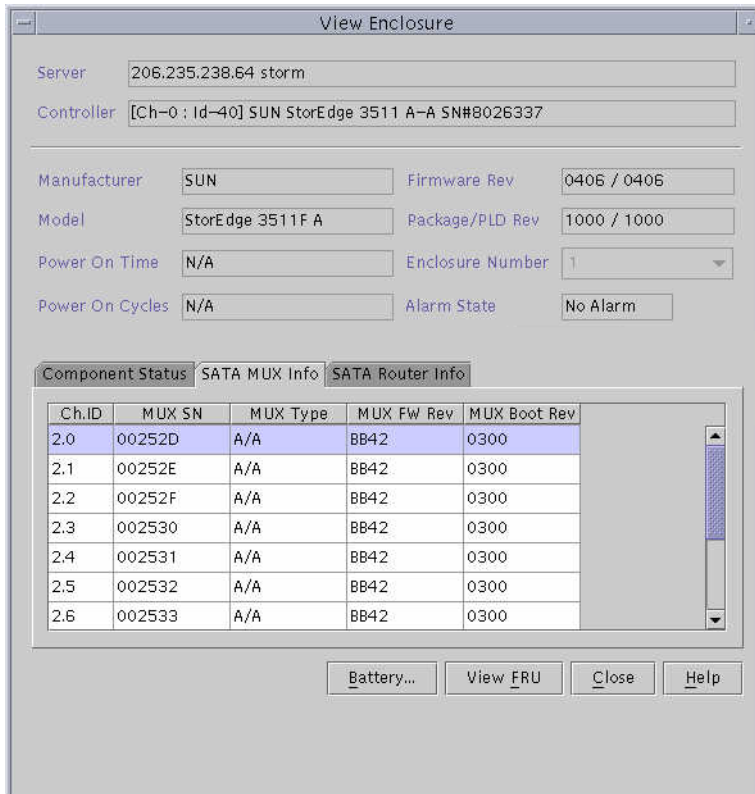
Temperature ID	Location
0	Drive midplane left temperature sensor #1
1	Drive midplane left temperature sensor #2
2	Drive midplane center temperature sensor #3
3	Drive midplane center temperature sensor #4
4	Drive midplane right temperature sensor #5
5	Drive midplane right temperature sensor #6
6	Upper IOM left temperature sensor #7
7	Upper IOM left temperature sensor #8
8	Lower IOM left temperature sensor #9
9	Lower IOM left temperature sensor #10
10	Left power supply temperature sensor #11
11	Right power supply temperature sensor #12

SES Voltage Sensors

Voltage sensors make sure that the array's voltage is within normal ranges. To check the status and determine the location of voltage sensors, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide*.

SATA MUX and SATA Router Information

To view the SATA multiplexer (MUX) board information for all SATA drives, select the SATA MUX Info tab. Each drive has an on MUX board. The information for the MUX board includes the channel number and ID of the drive attached to the MUX board, MUX board serial number, MUX board type (active-passive or active-active), path controller (PC150) firmware revision number, and firmware boot revision.



The screenshot shows the 'View Enclosure' window with the following details:

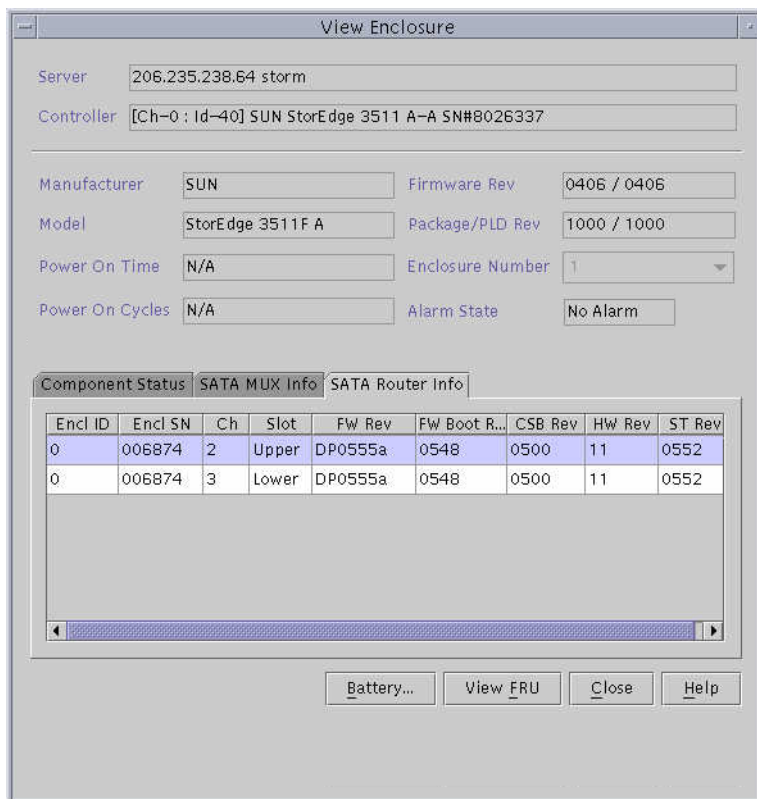
- Server: 206.235.238.64 storm
- Controller: [Ch-0 : Id-40] SUN StorEdge 3511 A-A SN#8026337
- Manufacturer: SUN, Firmware Rev: 0406 / 0406
- Model: StorEdge 3511F A, Package/PLD Rev: 1000 / 1000
- Power On Time: N/A, Enclosure Number: 1
- Power On Cycles: N/A, Alarm State: No Alarm

The 'Component Status' section is active, showing the 'SATA MUX Info' tab. The table below displays the MUX information for channels 2.0 through 2.6.

Ch.ID	MUX SN	MUX Type	MUX Fw Rev	MUX Boot Rev
2.0	00252D	A/A	BB42	0300
2.1	00252E	A/A	BB42	0300
2.2	00252F	A/A	BB42	0300
2.3	002530	A/A	BB42	0300
2.4	002531	A/A	BB42	0300
2.5	002532	A/A	BB42	0300
2.6	002533	A/A	BB42	0300

Buttons at the bottom: Battery..., View FRU, Close, Help

To view all accessible SATA routers behind the RAID controller, click the SATA Router tab. The information displayed includes the enclosure ID and enclosure serial number of the chassis that the SATA router resides in, the channel number that the router controls, slot position of the IOM board that the router resides on, router firmware revision number, router firmware boot revision, customer specified behavior (CSB) rev (a collection of memory resident parameters that define operational behavior of the router), hardware revision number, and the self-test revision number.



Battery Information

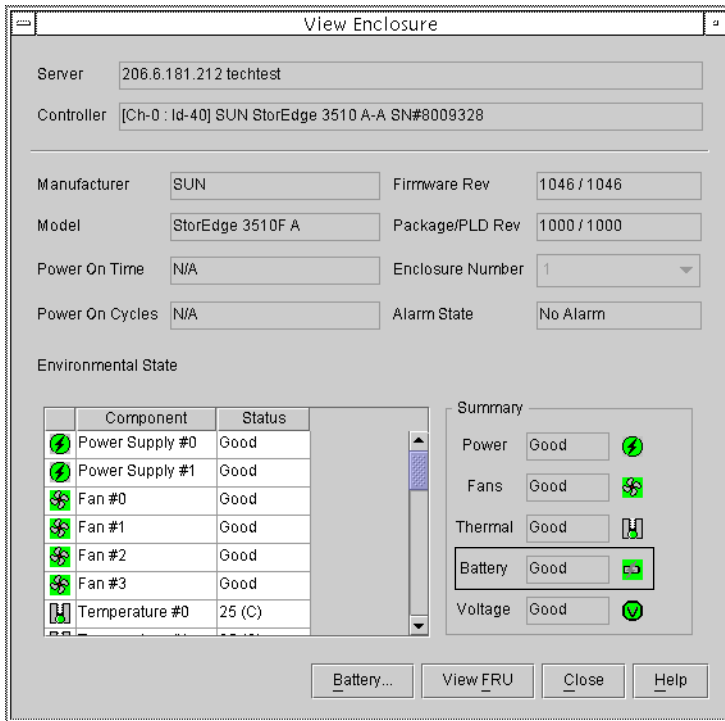
Note – The Battery Information window does not apply to the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array, the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array, or the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array.

In the event of a power failure, the battery maintains power to the cache for 72 hours. When power is restored, the data in cache is dumped to disk. For the Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service monitors the usable life of the battery and displays its status in the Battery Information window. The program calculates the battery expiration date using the battery type, manufacture date, and in-service date, which have been programmed at the factory.

Note – For a battery FRU, you need to verify the in-service date so that Sun StorEdge Configuration Service can set it as explained in [“To Verify the In-Service Date When Replacing a Battery”](#) on page 105.

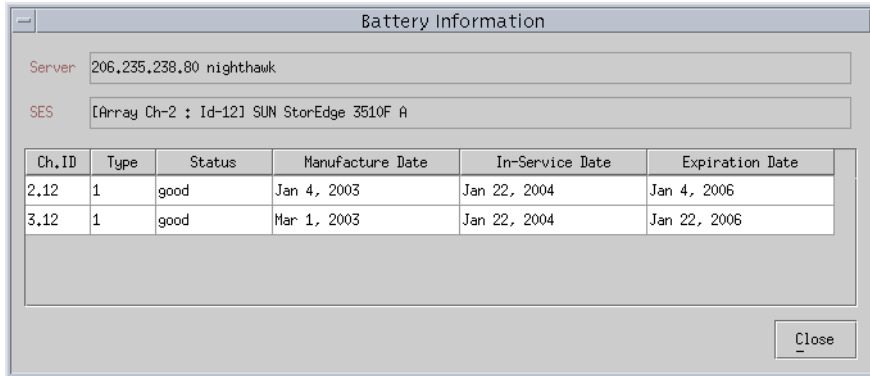
The enclosure icon on the main window displays a degraded (yellow) status 21 days before the battery is going to expire. The enclosure icon also displays a warning (yellow) status if the in-service date has not been set for a battery FRU. A critical (red) status is displayed when a battery has expired. See [“Device Status”](#) on page 77 for a description of device status symbols.

To view the battery status, choose View → View Enclosure or double-click the enclosure. The View Enclosure window is displayed, showing the battery status in the Summary box.



To view battery information, including type, status, manufacture date, in-service date, and expiration date, click Battery. The Battery Information window is displayed.

Note – If the battery type is an early board module (FRU ID 370-5545 REVB), then battery expiration monitoring is not supported.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Battery Information". It contains the following fields:

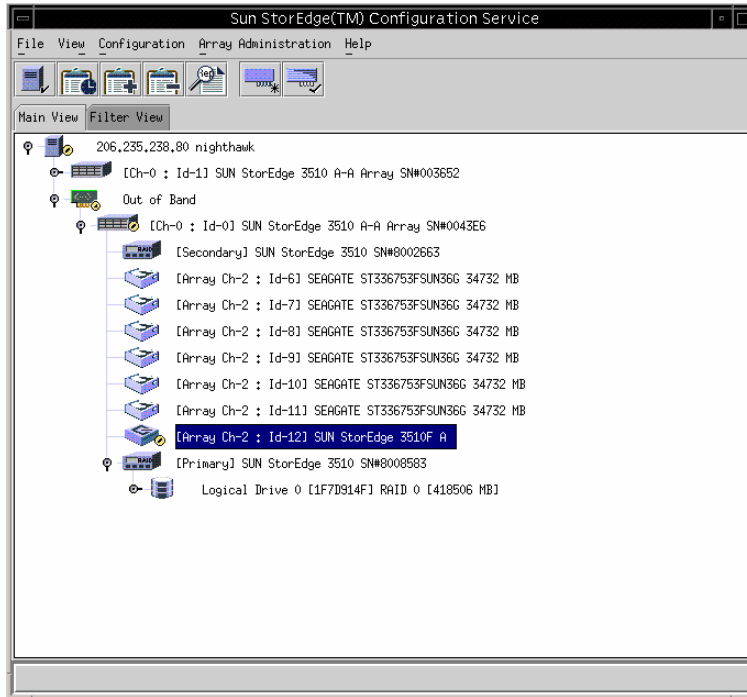
- Server: 206,235,238,80 nighthawk
- SES: [Array Ch-2 : Id-12] SUN StorEdge 3510F A

Ch.ID	Type	Status	Manufacture Date	In-Service Date	Expiration Date
2.12	1	good	Jan 4, 2003	Jan 22, 2004	Jan 4, 2006
3.12	1	good	Mar 1, 2003	Jan 22, 2004	Jan 22, 2006

A "Close" button is located at the bottom right of the window.

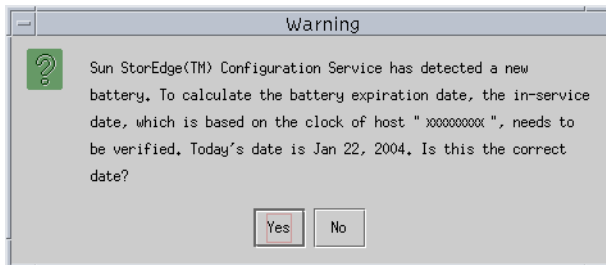
▼ To Verify the In-Service Date When Replacing a Battery

When Sun StorEdge Configuration Service detects a battery FRU, the enclosure icon displays a degraded (yellow) status symbol as shown in the following example.



1. Double-click the enclosure icon.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service calculates the battery expiration date using the in-service date (date that the battery is put into service), which is based on the host clock. The program prompts you to verify the date by displaying the following message:



2. If the host clock is correct, click Yes.

The following confirmation message is displayed. Click OK.



Sun StorEdge Configuration Service sets the in-service date and displays the date in the In-Service Date field in the Battery Information window.

3. If the host clock is incorrect, click No and reset the clock so that Sun StorEdge Configuration Service can prompt you to verify it again and set the in-service date.



Caution – If you do not reset and verify the in-service date, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service cannot accurately calculate the battery expiration date.

View FRU

A FRU is a field-replaceable unit. It is a part used to assemble a new system or to repair a system in the field. The Sun FRU ID (field-replaceable unit identification) program is a Sun solution for capturing, transmitting, and analyzing FRU-specific configuration, diagnosis, and failure information residing on the FRU.

Choose View → View FRU to display the FRU IDs and information for all FRUs in the array including Serial Number, Model, Description, Vendor ID, Time (time the FRU was programmed), and Location.

View FRU

Server: 206.235.238.53 ultra5

Controller: [Ch-0 -Id-0] SUN StorEdge 3310 A-A SN#900000

	FRU ID	Serial #	Model	Description	Vendor ID
✓	370-5403-01	900001	MN2-LCM-512-02	CTLR Mod, 512 Mem, Batt, LVD (Primary)	0x7F7F7F01
✓	370-5403-01	900000	MN2-LCM-512-02	CTLR Mod, 512 Mem, Batt, LVD (Secondary)	0x7F7F7F01
✓	370-5524-01	112233	MN2-RAID-LVD	BOX, RAID, LVD, Chassis+Bkpln	0x7F7F7F01
✓	370-5397-01	334455	MN2-RIOM-LVD-02	HostDrv I/O Mod, RAID, LVD	0x7F7F7F01
✓	370-5399-01	223344	MN2-TERM-02	Terminator Mod, LVD	0x7F7F7F01
✓	-	-		@ P p	0x7F7F7F7F
✓	-	-		@ P p	0x7F7F7F7F
✓	370-5394-01	556677	MN2-EMU-02	EMU, MOD w/SAF-TE (Left)	0x7F7F7F01
✓	370-5394-01	445566	MN2-EMU-02	EMU, MOD w/SAF-TE (Right)	0x7E7E7E01

Close

Note – You can also view the FRUs for a specific controller for the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array by clicking View FRU on the View Controller Configuration window, the View Primary Controller Configuration window and the View Secondary Controller Configuration window.

Array Administration Progress

Array Admin Progress displays the progress of new logical drive(s) initialization. This command is accessed by choosing View → Array Admin Progress.

Agent Options Management

Agent Options enables you to customize the agent options, including polling time, periodic device discovery time, and SMART monitoring.

To access Agent Options, choose View → Agent Options Management. For more information see, [“To Configure Agent Parameters”](#) on page 24.

Event Log

The console receives, logs, and displays events generated by managed servers and by the console itself.

The majority of the events are generated by the agents on the managed servers and occur when there are:

- Status changes on any device on a managed server, including the server itself (because of device failure, malfunction, or disconnection)
- Inventory changes (addition or removal of devices)
- Configuration changes (initial configuration setup and subsequent configuration changes)
- Array processes running on the server (initialization, parity checking, rebuilding)

Although array processes are initiated by the console, it is the server agent that generates operation notification events after these processes start on the server. For details about full event monitoring and email notification capabilities including sending email messages to a specified list when errors occur, see [“Email and SNMP” on page 245](#).

The console generates a much smaller number of events. For example, it generates an event if it does not receive a certain number of consecutive heartbeats from a managed server.

When the console receives any event, it logs it in to the Event Log file, `eventlog.txt`, and displays it in the Event Log window. Also, if the event occurs on a server, the notification of the event is sent to that server’s OS event log. In addition, when the event occurs on a server and that server is set up to send traps to an SNMP enterprise management console, such as HP OpenView, the server agent also sends a trap message to that computer.

Depending on the event received, the console might initiate a refresh process to request the inventory from the last periodic scan of the server involved, so the console can update the server’s inventory on the main window.

During this refresh process, the satellite dish icon is attached to the server icon, and you cannot perform any configuration and array activity commands on that server until the process is completed and the main window is updated.

Event Log File

The Event Log window displays up to 500 events at a time. If there are more than 500 events, only the most recent 500 are displayed in the Event Log window. However, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service does not delete any events from the Event Log file, `eventlog.txt`, until more than 10,000 events have been logged.

- After 10,000 events, the program reduces the Event Log file to the most current 500 events and then accumulates events until the limit of 10,000 is exceeded again.
- The fields of each event record are separated by a semi-colon so you can easily import the file into a database.
- `eventlog.txt` is located in the directory where the console program files are installed.

Note – If the event log appears not to contain all of the events from the managed array, close and reopen the console.

The events from the agent are logged into the system log of the host where the agent is installed, even if the console is not running. The following table lists the locations where the events are logged to in each OS.

TABLE 6-5 Event Log Location

OS	Event Log Location
Solaris OS	<code>/var/adm/messages</code> (Also shown on the console)
Linux OS	<code>/var/log/messages</code>
Microsoft Windows OS	The application log of the system, which can be viewed using Event Viewer. You can also read the event log directly from the file <code>\Program Files\Sun\sscs\eventlog.txt</code>
HP-UX OS	<code>/var/adm/syslog/syslog.log</code>

▼ To Filter Events

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service generates event log entries for three severity levels: informational, warning, and critical. All three types are marked as "Error" in the log file. If you want to limit your event monitoring to critical events only, you can do so by editing the `/etc/init.d/ssagent` file.

Modify `/etc/init.d/ssagent` as follows.

1. After the line `_start)`, add the following two lines:

```
SSCS_SUPPORT_MESSAGELEVELS=1
export SSCS_SUPPORT_MESSAGELEVELS
```

2. Stop and restart the Sun StorEdge Configuration Service agent.

```
# /etc/init.d/ssagent stop
# /etc/init.d/ssagent start
```

▼ To Write Events to a Log File for an IBM AIX Host

For an IBM AIX OS, the event logs are not logged by default. You might need to change `/etc/syslog.conf` to enable it to write to a log file.

1. Modify `/etc/syslog.conf` to add the following line:

```
*.info /tmp/syslog rotate size 1000k
```

2. Make sure the file that is specified in the added line exists.

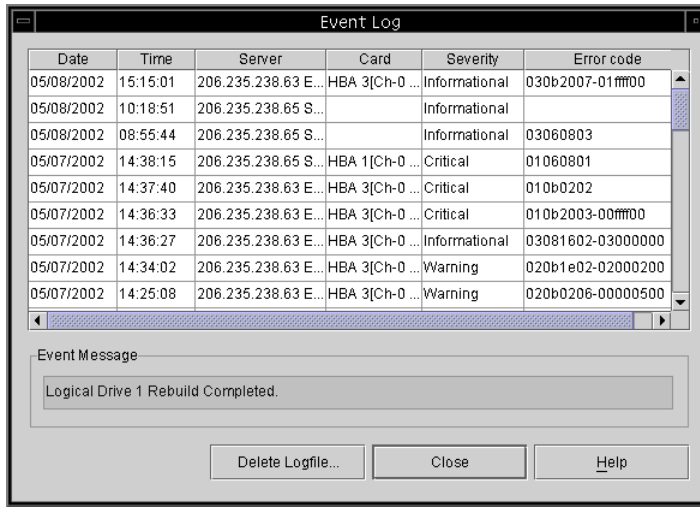
If it does not exist, you need to create it. For example, in the above configuration, you would create a file named `/tmp/syslog`.

3. Change to `/tmp/syslog` and restart the `syslog` by typing:

```
kill -HUP `cat /etc/syslog.pid`
```

Event Log Window

To access the Event Log window, choose View → Event Log. You can hide this window by clicking Close. You can then reopen it (from the View menu) without losing any content.



The screenshot shows the 'Event Log' window with a table of event records and an 'Event Message' section below it. The table has columns for Date, Time, Server, Card, Severity, and Error code. The event message section contains the text 'Logical Drive 1 Rebuild Completed.' and three buttons: 'Delete Logfile...', 'Close', and 'Help'.

Date	Time	Server	Card	Severity	Error code
05/08/2002	15:15:01	206.235.238.63 E...	HBA 3[Ch-0 ...	Informational	030b2007-01fff00
05/08/2002	10:18:51	206.235.238.65 S...		Informational	
05/08/2002	08:55:44	206.235.238.65 S...		Informational	03060803
05/07/2002	14:38:15	206.235.238.65 S...	HBA 1[Ch-0 ...	Critical	01060801
05/07/2002	14:37:40	206.235.238.63 E...	HBA 3[Ch-0 ...	Critical	010b0202
05/07/2002	14:36:33	206.235.238.63 E...	HBA 3[Ch-0 ...	Critical	010b2003-00fff00
05/07/2002	14:36:27	206.235.238.63 E...	HBA 3[Ch-0 ...	Informational	03081602-03000000
05/07/2002	14:34:02	206.235.238.63 E...	HBA 3[Ch-0 ...	Warning	020b1e02-02000200
05/07/2002	14:25:08	206.235.238.63 E...	HBA 3[Ch-0 ...	Warning	020b0206-00000500

Event Message

Logical Drive 1 Rebuild Completed.

Delete Logfile... Close Help

The consoles begin to receive events when they are running, regardless of whether the Event Log window is open.

1. To delete the event log file, click **Delete Logfile**.

The Confirmation window is displayed, prompting you to save the log file.

Note – To delete the event log file, a server must be online.

2. Select one of the following options:

- Select yes at the prompt, select a folder and a file name, and save the log file.
- Select no at the prompt.

The contents of the log file is deleted.

Note – You can also save and delete the contents of the `eventlog.txt` file using the Save Event Log and Delete Event Log icons on the toolbar.

Each event record contains the fields shown in the following table.

TABLE 6-6 Event Record Fields

Date	The date on the server when the event occurred.
Time	The time on the server when the event occurred.
Server	The IP address of the server and the server name.
Card	The card name, if applicable, for the event.
Severity	One of three severity levels: Critical, Warning, or Informational. (These states are described in the following subsection.)
Error Code	The basic error code and the extended error code, separated by a dash.
Text Message	A text message describing the event.

Severity Levels

- **Critical** – A message that does require intervention by the network administrator, such as the failure of a device, power supply, or fan.
- **Warning** – Warning messages generally indicate internal program events. However, if you see a large number of these messages, it might mean that there is a problem with the server or the network.
- **Informational** – A message about the devices on the server that does not require intervention by the network administrator.

You receive alarm forwarding for the level selected and any other levels of a higher severity. Thus, if you choose Informational, you are also notified of all alarm conditions. However, if you choose Critical, only Critical alarms are received.

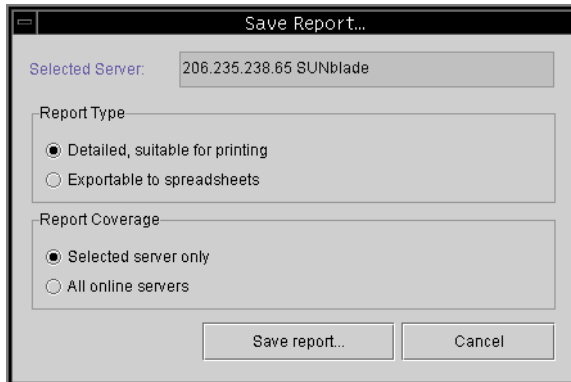
For further information about messages, see [“Troubleshooting” on page 259](#).

Save Report

The Save Report option creates an XML file containing all the information available to the program about a specific array.

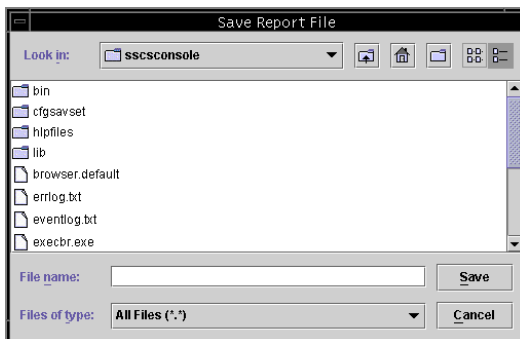
1. Choose File → Save Report.

The Exportable to spreadsheets option enables you to save the report with delimiters (Comma, Semicolon, Tab, Colon, and Vertical Bar) for export to spreadsheets.



2. Select Save report.

The Save Report File window is displayed.



3. Type a file name to identify the file and click Save.

The program writes the report on the inventory and status of the selected server and its devices.

The default save location for the report file is in the installation directory and the default file extension is `.xml`. It might be helpful to create a subdirectory for saving reports, so they do not clutter up the installation directory.

A report includes the following information:

- General array details
 - Array name, status, manufacturer, model
 - Firmware version
 - Boot record version
 - MAC, IP, netmask, and gateway address
 - Serial numbers of controllers
- General overview of the array configuration
 - Total number of logical drives, logical volumes, and partitions
- Controller parameters
 - Host and drive channel settings and IDs
- Detailed list of each logical drive
 - RAID level
 - Number and size of physical drives in a logical drive
 - Number and size of partitions per logical drive and their mappings
- SAF-TE/SES information
- List of FRUs
- Details of the physical drives

The following excerpt is from an example report for a Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel array in .xml format, which can be used as input into another program.

CODE EXAMPLE 6-1 Excerpt From Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel Array Report

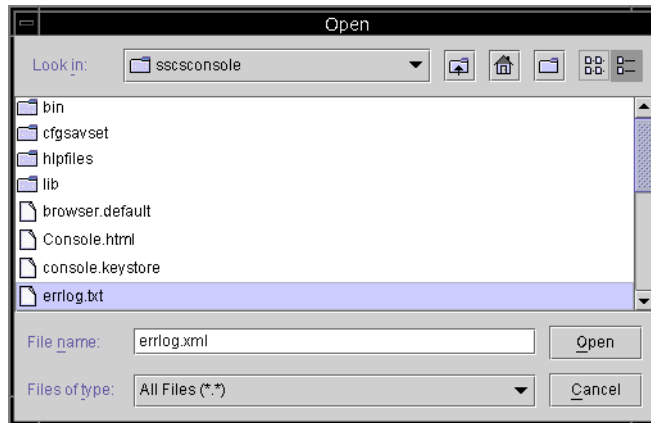
```
<raidbaseview>
  <raidsystem>
    <name> SUN StorEdge 3510 A-A Array SN#000198 </name>
    <status>Good</status>
    <manufacturer>SUN</manufacturer>
    <model>StorEdge 3510</model>
    <firmware_version>3.27K</firmware_version>
    <bootrecord_version>1.31H</bootrecord_version>
    <mac_address>00:C0:FF:00:01:98</mac_address>
    <ip>206.235.238.198</ip>
    <netmask>255.255.255.0</netmask>
    <gateway>206.235.238.1</gateway>
    <primary_sn>3341275</primary_sn>
    <secondary_sn>3341258</secondary_sn>
    <controller_name>198</controller_name>
    <unique_id>198</unique_id>
    <id_of_nvram_defaults>327K 3510 v2.39</id_of_nvram_defaults>
    <total_logical_drives>8</total_logical_drives>
    <total_logical_volumes>0</total_logical_volumes>
    <total_partitions>278</total_partitions>
    <total_physical_drives>24</total_physical_drives>
    <total_safte_ses_devices>1</total_safte_ses_devices>
    <cache_size>1024MB ECC SDRAM</cache_size>
    <cpu>PPC750</cpu>
    <battery>Good</battery>
    <node_name>206000C0FF000198</node_name>
    <fru>
      <idx>0</idx>
      <item></item>
      <serial_number></serial_number>
      <revision></revision>
      <vendor_jedec_id></vendor_jedec_id>
      <manufacturing_date></manufacturing_date>
      <manufacturing_location></manufacturing_location>
```

View Report

Use the View Report option to review a report that was created.

1. Choose File → View Report.

The Open dialog box for selecting the report is displayed.



2. Select the report you want to review and click Open.

In-Band and Out-of-Band Storage Management

The out-of-band storage management capability enables you to monitor and manage arrays over the network using TCP/IP. Unlike in-band storage management (the standard method of storage management for storage), which requires the agent to be running on the server that is physically attached to the storage, out-of-band storage management does not require the agent to be running on the server that is physically attached to the storage. With out-of-band storage management, if the server that is attached to the storage is shut down, monitoring and maintenance is unaffected.

The following figures show examples of in-band and out-of-band storage management configurations.

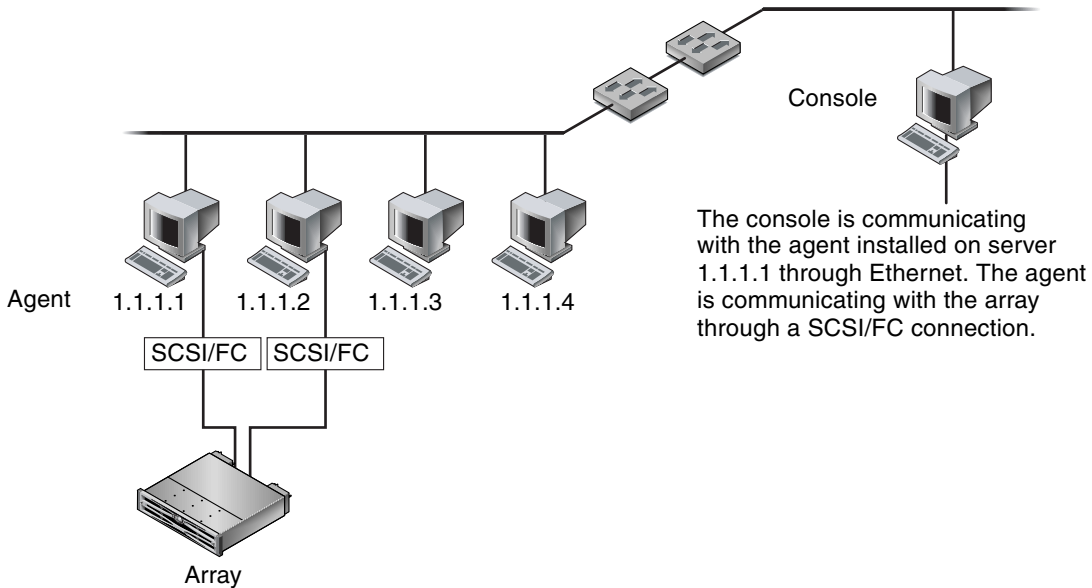


FIGURE 6-3 In-Band Management

For more information about configuring your array for out-of-band management, see [“Email and SNMP” on page 245](#).

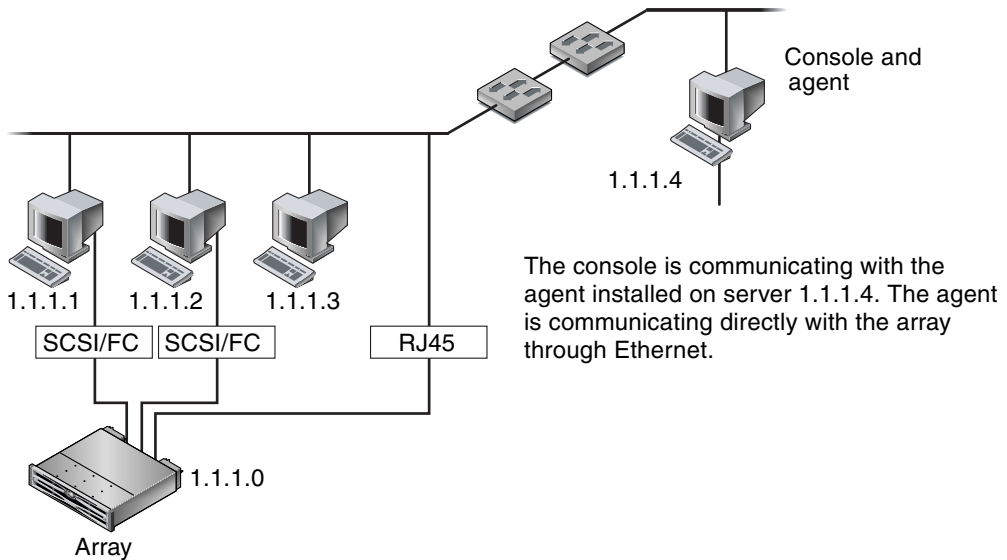


FIGURE 6-4 Out-of-Band Management

▼ To Use Out-of-Band Management

Note – Controller, SAF-TE, SES, PLD, and Drive firmware cannot be upgraded through out-of-band management.

Note – If you assign an IP address to an array to manage it out-of-band, for security reasons consider using an IP address on a private network rather than a publicly routable network. Using the controller firmware to set a password for the controller limits unauthorized access to the array. Changing the firmware’s Network Protocol Support settings can provide further security by disabling the ability to remotely connect to the array using individual protocols such as HTTP, HTTPS, telnet, FTP, and SSH. Refer to the “Communication Parameters” section of the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User’s Guide* for more information.

1. Make sure you have set up a static or dynamic IP address for the array.

If the program has been configured already to manage the array through in-band, you can set the IP address through Change Controller Parameters. To set the IP address, see [“In the Peripheral Device Status box, click the scroll bar and scroll down to view environmental status information.” on page 198](#). If the program has not been configured yet, you can set the IP address through an RS-232 terminal. Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.

2. After setting the IP address, reset the controller.

Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance, and then click Reset the Controller.

3. Select the server.

4. Select View → Agent Options Management.

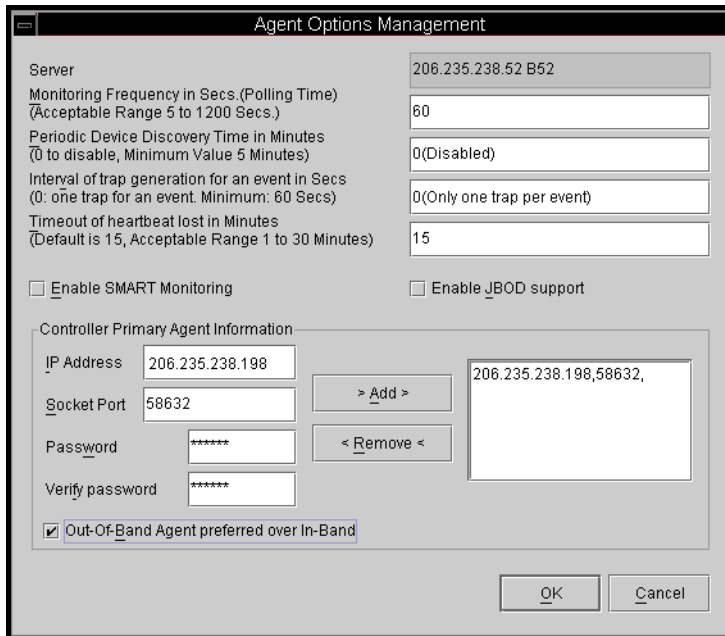
5. Type the IP address of the array in the IP Address field, and click Add.

6. If you have created a password for the array using the firmware application, type it in the Password field, and then re-type it in the Verify Password field.

Note – By default there is no password set for the array. For information on creating or changing the password, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User’s Guide* for your array.

7. Check Out-Of-Band Agent preferred over In-Band and click OK.

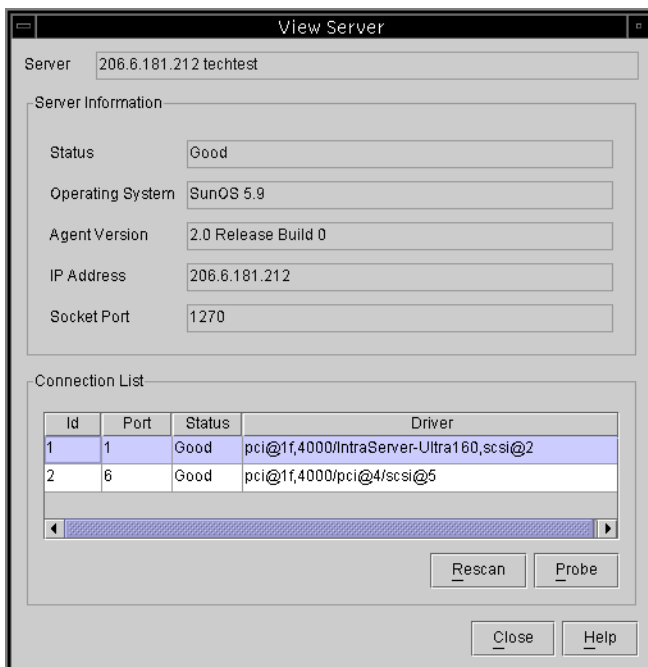
Note – With this option checked, out-of-band becomes the preferred method of storage management. If the out-of-band configuration is removed, the program reverts to in-band storage and monitoring after you start/restart the services.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Agent Options Management". It contains several configuration fields and checkboxes. The "Server" field is set to "206.235.238.52 B52". The "Monitoring Frequency in Secs.(Polling Time)" is set to "60". The "Periodic Device Discovery Time in Minutes" is set to "0(Disabled)". The "Interval of trap generation for an event in Secs" is set to "0(Only one trap per event)". The "Timeout of heartbeat lost in Minutes" is set to "15". There are two checkboxes: "Enable SMART Monitoring" and "Enable JBOD support", both of which are unchecked. Below these is a section titled "Controller Primary Agent Information" which includes fields for "IP Address" (206.235.238.198), "Socket Port" (58632), "Password" (masked with asterisks), and "Verify password" (masked with asterisks). There are "Add" and "Remove" buttons, and a list box containing "206.235.238.198,58632,". At the bottom of this section, the checkbox "Out-Of-Band Agent preferred over In-Band" is checked. The dialog box has "OK" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

Server	206.235.238.52 B52
Monitoring Frequency in Secs.(Polling Time) (Acceptable Range 5 to 1200 Secs.)	60
Periodic Device Discovery Time in Minutes (0 to disable, Minimum Value 5 Minutes)	0(Disabled)
Interval of trap generation for an event in Secs (0: one trap for an event. Minimum: 60 Secs)	0(Only one trap per event)
Timeout of heartbeat lost in Minutes (Default is 15, Acceptable Range 1 to 30 Minutes)	15
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable SMART Monitoring	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable JBOD support
Controller Primary Agent Information	
IP Address	206.235.238.198
Socket Port	58632
Password	*****
Verify password	*****
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Out-Of-Band Agent preferred over In-Band	

8. For the program to recognize the out-of-band array and display an out-of-band HBA icon in the main window, you need to send a Probe command to the server. Choose View → View Server, and then click Probe.

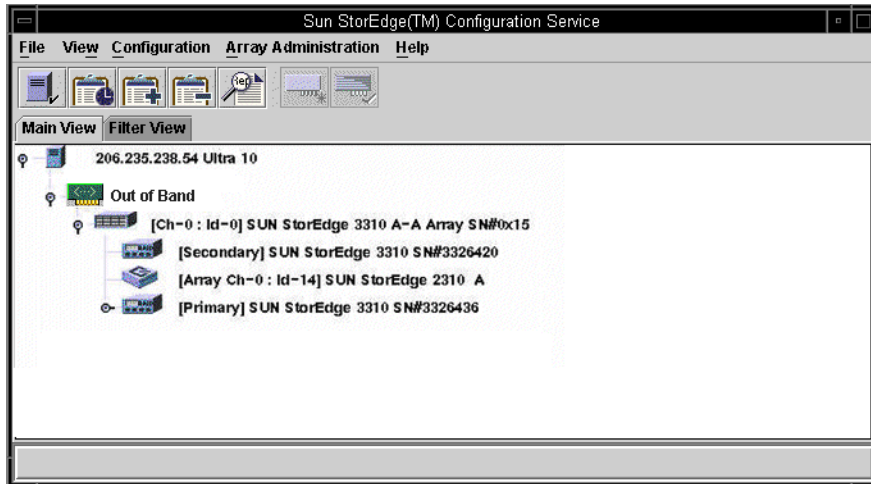


9. If the program has not been configured to manage the array, you need to assign the server to manage the controller.

Choose Array Administration → Controller Assignment. Select a server from the Server to manage this controller list and click Apply.

An out-of-band HBA is displayed in the main window and View HBA Card is displayed in the Menu Bar under the View menu.

Note – If an out -of-band HBA is not displayed in the window, reset the controller.



▼ To Remove an Array From Out-of-Band Management

1. Select the server.
2. Choose View → Agent Options Management.
3. Select the array's IP address that you want to remove, click Remove, and click OK.
The HBA remains displayed in the main window; to remove it, you need to unassign and reassign the managing server.
4. From the main window, choose Array Administration → Controller Assignment.
5. Select the controller for which you want to unassign a server.
6. From the Server to manage this controller list box, select none, and click Apply.
7. Click Close to confirm.
8. Reassign the managing server following the steps in ["To Assign a Server to Manage a Controller" on page 21.](#)

Managing Storage Through the Web

The web-based storage management capability enables you to conveniently manage the array through the web. The following steps describe how to set up the array for web-based management and how to access it through a web browser.

Note – This feature requires Sun StorEdge Enterprise Storage Manager Topology Reporter (included in the Sun StorEdge Enterprise Storage Manager software) to be installed on a Solaris host. Refer to the “Other Supported Software” section in the release notes for your array for more information.

Note – This feature is not supported on a Linux host; that is, if the agent has been installed on a Linux host, the Configure Web Server option on the Custom Configure window is unavailable. You can use a Linux host web browser to load the console, but the agent must be installed on a system running the Solaris OS.

Web Browser Requirements

Sun StorEdge Enterprise Storage Manager Topology Reporter can be viewed through a URL on any machine connected to the same network (you must have an account on the Solaris host machine).

UNIX OS

TABLE 6-7 Minimum Web Browser Requirements for UNIX OS

Web Browser	Java Plug-in
Netscape Navigator 4.79	Java Plug-in 1.2.2
Mozilla 2.1	Java Plug-in 1.2

Note – For the IBM AIX OS, Java Plug-in software versions earlier than 1.3 are not supported.

Microsoft Windows OS

TABLE 6-8 Minimum Web Browser Requirements for Microsoft Windows OS

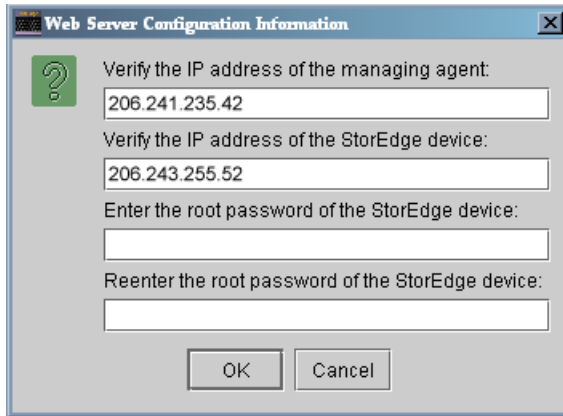
Web Browser	Java Plug-in
Internet Explorer 4.0	Java Plug-in 1.2.2
Netscape Navigator 4.79	Java Plug-in 1.2.2
Mozilla 2.1	Java Plug-in 1.2

Setting Up the Array

Although the entire Sun StorEdge Configuration Service package isn't required to be loaded on the machine that is going to be used to access the array from the web, a few program files are needed; therefore, the entire Sun StorEdge Configuration Service package must be installed on another server so you can transfer files from it to the array. The following procedure describes how to conveniently transfer the necessary files to set up web management.

1. **Make sure you have an Ethernet connection from the network to the array and you have established an IP address for it.**
2. **From the server that has the entire Sun StorEdge Configuration Service package installed, choose Configuration → Custom Configure.**
3. **Select Configure Web Server.**
4. **Verify the IP address of the managing agent, which is the agent that is running on the server directly connected to the storage.**
5. **Enter the IP address of the array where the files are going to be transferred and click OK.**

Note – By default there is no password set for the array. If you have created one using the firmware application, you must enter it. For information on creating or changing the password, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for your array.



After the files are transferred successfully, a confirmation message is displayed, and the console can now be accessed through the web.

▼ To Access the Console From the Web Browser

1. Open the web browser.
2. Type the following URL address:

```
http://ip address of controller/esm.html
```

3. Continue monitoring, maintaining, and updating storage as explained in the applicable chapters in this guide.


Maintaining the Array

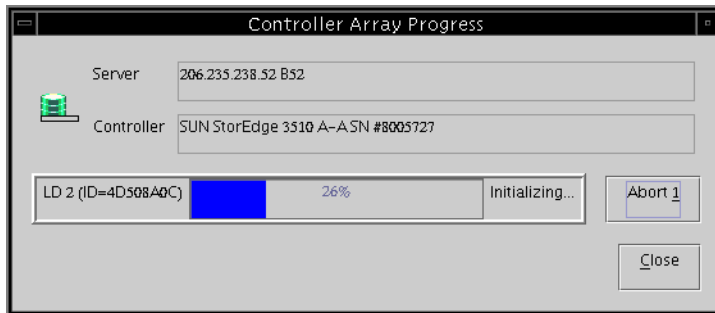
This chapter explains how to maintain the integrity of the array using Array Administration. Topics covered in this chapter are as follows:

- “Array Administration Activities” on page 128
 - “To Check Parity” on page 128
 - “To Schedule a Parity Check” on page 130
 - “To Scan Physical Disks for Bad Blocks (Media Scan)” on page 132
 - “To Stop a Media Scan on a Logical Drive or Physical Drive” on page 135
- “Failed Drives” on page 136
 - “To Automatically Rebuild a Drive Using a Standby Drive” on page 136
 - “To Rebuild a Device Without a Standby Drive” on page 137
 - “To Check the Progress of the Rebuilding Process” on page 138
 - “To Manually Rebuild a Failed Drive” on page 138
 - “To Restore a Logical Drive Configuration” on page 140
- “Controller Maintenance Options” on page 143
 - “To Reset the Controller” on page 143
 - “To Shut Down the Controller” on page 144
 - “To Mute the Controller Beeper” on page 144
 - “To Bring a Failed Controller Back Online” on page 145
 - “To Display Performance Statistics” on page 145
 - “To Get Controller Boot Time” on page 146
 - “To Convert a Dual Controller Array to a Single Controller Array” on page 147

Array Administration Activities

Array administration activities such as initialization, drive rebuilding, and parity checking can take some time, depending on the size of the logical drive or physical drives involved.

After one of these processes has started, the Controller Array Progress window is displayed. If you close the window, to view progress, click the Progress Indicator icon  or choose View → Array Admin Progress. You can stop any of these processes at any time by clicking Abort.



▼ To Check Parity

Parity checking is the process where the integrity of redundant data on fault-tolerant logical drives (RAID 1, 3, and 5) is checked. Depending on which options you select, the parity can be overwritten and any error reported as an event.

1. **Select the logical drive on which you want to run parity check.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Parity Check.**

Note – You need to be logged in as either `ssadmin` or `ssconfig` to access options on this menu.

3. When the Logical Drive Parity Check window is displayed, select the logical drive on which you want to run a parity check.

LD	Status	Size (MB)	RAID	Write Policy	#Drvs
0	Good	2000	5	Default(Writ...	3
2	Good	139753	1	Default(Writ...	3

To run a parity check on multiple drives, choose the Array Administration → Schedule Parity Check command to schedule a parity check to be run in the near future (such as within three minutes). When scheduled parity check runs, it automatically performs the parity checks one after another.

4. Select from the following options:

- Regenerate – For RAID 3 and 5 configurations, the parity checking procedure on a logical drive recalculates the parity of data stripes in each of the logical drive's RAID stripe sets and compares it with the stored parity. For RAID 1 configurations, if an inconsistency is encountered, data is copied from the master disk to the slave disk. If a bad block is encountered, the data is copied from the other disk, master or slave, to the reporting disk drive reallocating the bad block.



Caution – If an array's data parity is seriously damaged, restoring data by regenerating might cause data loss. Only select Regenerate after you have performed any necessary data recovery based on the parity check errors.

Note – If you select Regenerate, make sure that Generate Error Event is also selected so that if inconsistent parity is encountered, bad blocks are specified.

- Generate Error Event (default) – When a parity check is run and a discrepancy is found, an error is reported, which enables you to analyze the error and check the integrity of your data before overwriting the parity drive.

5. Click the Parity Check button to start the parity check process.

Once a parity check has started, the Progress Indicator is automatically displayed. If this window is closed, it can be reopened by choosing View → Array Admin Progress or by clicking the Progress Indicator icon. A window is displayed that shows the percentage of completion progress for each array.

To stop the parity check, click Cancel.

▼ To Schedule a Parity Check

Choose Array Administration → Schedule Parity Check to check parity of a specific logical drive array at scheduled intervals (for example, during off hours).

- You can choose to schedule any number of logical drives configured on a managed server; however, you can establish only one schedule per array controller.
- When you schedule multiple logical drives, the check is done in sequence from the lowest to the highest numbered logical drive.
- A parity check requires an average of five minutes per Gbyte of storage.
- You can control the amount of system resources allocated to the parity check by changing the rebuild priority. To change the rebuild priority, see [“Disk Array Tab” on page 189](#).
- A parity check can be stopped once it has started. There is no corruption as a result of this operation.

Note – You need to be logged in as either `ssadmin` or `ssconfig` to access options on this menu.

1. Select the controller on which you want to schedule the parity check.

2. Choose Array Administration → Schedule Parity Check.

The Schedule Parity Check window is displayed.

LD	Status	Size	RAID	Write Policy	# of Drives	Regenerate	Generate Error Event
0	Good	2000	5	Default(Wr...	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	Good	139753	1	Default(Wr...	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

3. Make selections in the appropriate fields on this window.

- Listed Logical Drives – A list of the available fault-tolerant logical arrays. Use the Shift key to select multiple drives.
- Regenerate – For RAID 3 and 5 configurations, the parity checking procedure on a logical drive recalculates the parity of data stripes in each of the logical drive's RAID stripe sets and compares it with the stored parity. For RAID 1 configurations, if an inconsistency is encountered, data is copied from the master disk to the slave disk. If a bad block is encountered, the data is copied from the other disk, master or slave, to the reporting disk drive reallocating the bad block.



Caution – If an array’s data parity is seriously damaged, restoring data by regenerating might cause data loss. Only select Regenerate after you have performed any necessary data recovery based on the parity check errors.

Note – If you select Regenerate, make sure that Generate Error Event is also selected so that if inconsistent parity is encountered, bad blocks are specified.

- Generate Error Event (default) – When a parity check is run and a discrepancy is found, an error is reported, which enables you to analyze the error and check the integrity of your data before overwriting the parity drive.
- Rebuild Priority – The amount of resources allocated to perform a rebuild (low, normal, improved, high). Select Change Controller Parameters from the Custom Configuration Options window to change the Rebuild Priority.
- How Often – Specify how often you want the parity checked.
- Starting Day – Specify the day of the week you would like this schedule to start.
- Starting Time – Specify the time on the starting day you would like this schedule to begin.
- Existing Schedule – The current parity schedule: logical drive, frequency, starting day, and time.
- Next Parity Check – The date and time you want the next parity check to start.

4. When you are satisfied with the schedule, click OK.

▼ To Scan Physical Disks for Bad Blocks (Media Scan)

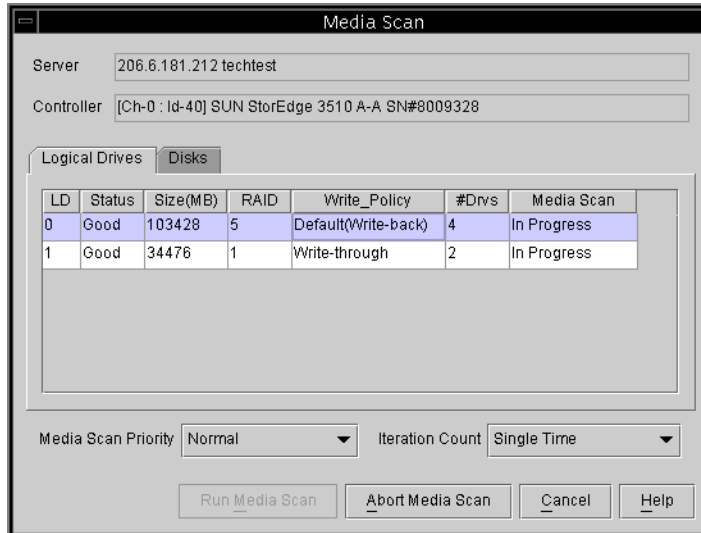
The media scan feature sequentially checks each physical drive in a selected logical drive, block by block, for bad blocks. If a bad block is encountered, the controller rebuilds the data from the bad block onto a good block if one is available on the physical drive. If no good blocks are available on the physical drive, the controller designates the physical drive “Bad,” generates an event message, and if a spare drive is available, begins rebuilding data from the bad physical drive onto the spare.

Note – A firmware menu option called Media Scan at Power-Up specifies whether media scan runs automatically following a controller power-cycle, reset, or after logical drive initialization. This setting is disabled by default. For more information, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User’s Guide*.

If you have disabled or stopped the automatic continuous media scan, you can start a media scan manually on a logical drive or a single physical drive that makes up a logical drive. It is useful to run a media scan if a drive has failed, if drive errors are encountered, or when a rebuild is required after replacing a drive.

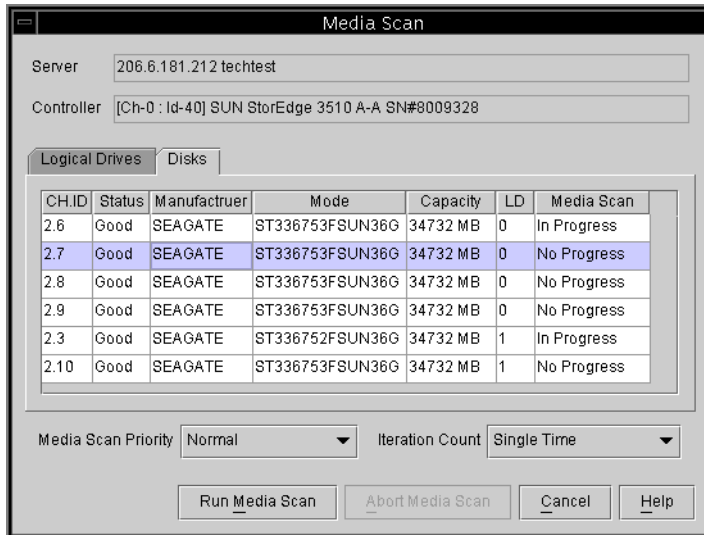
1. **Select a logical drive.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Media Scan.**

After a few moments, the Media Scan window is displayed.



3. **To start a media scan on a logical drive, click the Logical Drives tab, and select the logical drive to scan.**

To start a media scan on a physical drive that makes up the logical drive, select the Disks tab, and select the physical drive to scan.



4. Select a Media Scan Priority:

- **Low** – Media scan is not performed until other tasks have been completed.
- **Normal** – Media scan is typically performed within three seconds.
- **Improved** – Media scan is typically performed within one second.
- **High** – Media scan is performed immediately.

5. Select an Iteration Count to specify whether the physical drives are to be checked one time or continuously.

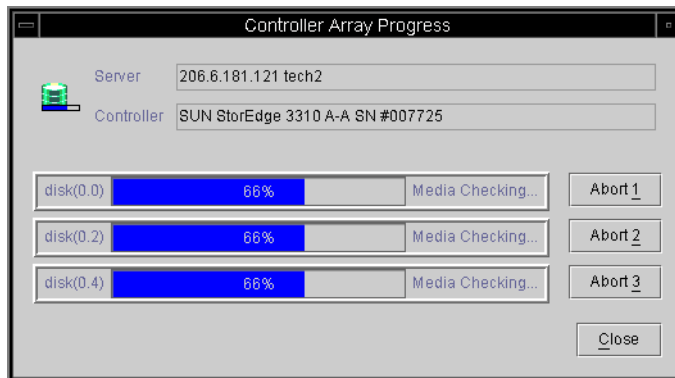
Single time is the default value.

6. Click Run Media Scan, and click OK to continue.

Note – If a media scan is already running, the Run Media Scan button is unavailable.

7. Click Close on the Starting Array Administration window.

The scan progress is displayed in the Controller Array Progress window.



Depending on the size of the logical drive and the number of physical drives it contains, the scanning process might take some time to complete.

8. When the Controller Array Progress window shows 100% completion, check the event log to determine the condition of the physical disks.

See [“Event Log” on page 109](#) for information about viewing the event log.

▼ To Stop a Media Scan on a Logical Drive or Physical Drive

1. Select a logical drive.

2. Choose Array Administration → Media Scan.

After a few moments, the Media Scan window is displayed.

3. To stop a media scan on a logical drive, click the Logical Drives tab, and select the logical drive on which you want to stop the scan.

To stop a media scan on a physical drive that makes up the logical drive, select the Disks tab, and select the physical drive on which you want to stop the scan.

4. Click Abort Media Scan.

5. Click OK to continue.

6. Click Close on the Starting Array Administration window.

Note – To stop a media scan on a physical drive, you can also select Abort for the on the Controller Array Progress window.

Failed Drives

This section contains procedures for recovering from a drive failure with and without a standby drive. If for some reason these procedures do not start the rebuilding process, instructions are also provided for manually starting a rebuild after a drive failure.

Caution – Be sure to configure a local or global standby drive for each logical drive at the time of initial configuration. Depending on the type of RAID level used and archiving procedure implemented, significant data loss might occur in cases of single or multiple drive failures. Additionally, make tested spare drives readily available on site for immediate replacement if a malfunction occurs.

▼ To Automatically Rebuild a Drive Using a Standby Drive

When a drive associated with a fault-tolerant logical drive fails, and a standby drive has previously been installed and configured as either a global or local spare, the failed drive is automatically substituted and its data rebuilt using the designated spare drive. For this to occur flawlessly, the spare drive's capacity must *always* be equivalent to or larger than the failed drive that is being replaced.

The rebuilding process normally starts within one to two minutes. It is performed in the background and takes approximately eight minutes per Gbyte when there is no other activity on the controller.

During the automatic rebuild process, normal activity might continue, although performance might degrade. The degree to which performance degrades is determined by the rebuild priority set for the controller. (To change the rebuild priority, see [“Disk Array Tab” on page 189.](#))

The progress of the rebuild process is displayed when you choose View → Array Admin Progress.

1. **Reestablish automatic rebuild capability by replacing the failed drive, using instructions contained in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.**
2. **Wait at least 60 seconds after removing the failed drive before inserting a new drive.**

Make sure the replacement drive is at least equal to the largest drive in the enclosure. Install the replacement drive in the same slot (drive bay) as the failed drive; the replacement drive then becomes the new standby drive.
3. **After the rebuild process is complete and the logical drive is online again, back up the array controller configuration to a file on an external drive or diskette.**

See [“To Save the Logical Drive Configuration”](#) on page 29.

▼ To Rebuild a Device Without a Standby Drive


If there is no standby drive in the array, you need to replace the failed drive before the automatic rebuild process can start.

1. **To recover from a drive failure when there is no standby drive, replace the failed drive by using the instructions contained in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.**
2. **Wait at least 60 seconds after removing the failed drive before inserting a new drive.**

Make sure the capacity of the replacement drive is at least equal to that of the failed drive. Install the replacement drive at the same address (drive bay) as the failed drive.
3. **Once the failed drive is replaced in the same slot, you need to scan it in.**

For detailed instructions on scanning in a drive, see [“To Scan in New Hard Drives \(SCSI only\)”](#) on page 170.
4. **After the drive has been scanned, you need to manually rebuild it by choosing *Array Administration* → *Rebuild*.**

▼ To Check the Progress of the Rebuilding Process

1. **Choose View → Array Admin Progress or click the Progress Indicator icon in the upper right corner of the window .**

The Controller Array Progress window is displayed that shows the completion percentage of the rebuild. However, if there are activities (such as initialization, rebuild, or parity check) occurring on multiple controllers, the Select Controller Progress window is displayed first.

2. **Select the controller whose progress you want to view and click OK.**

The Controller Array Progress window is displayed that shows the array progress of the selected controller. For more information, see [“Array Administration Activities” on page 128](#).

▼ To Manually Rebuild a Failed Drive

In most cases, you do not need to use the manual rebuild process because replaced drives are automatically rebuilt.

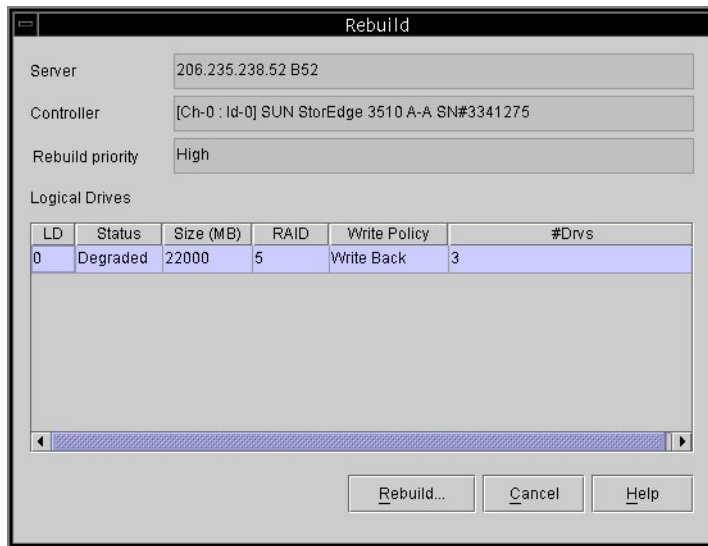
If a spare is not present when the failure occurs, or for some reason the drive does not rebuild, you can use Rebuild to manually start the rebuild process. Also, if the rebuild process is interrupted by a reset, use Rebuild to restart the rebuilding process.

1. **Replace the failed drive, using the instructions contained in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.**
2. **Wait at least 60 seconds after removing the failed drive before inserting a new drive.**

Make sure the capacity of the replacement drive is at least equal to that of the largest drive in the enclosure.

3. Choose Array Administration → Rebuild.

The Rebuild window is displayed.



4. Select the status record of the replacement drive.

5. Click Rebuild to start the rebuild process.

The rebuild process is performed in the background and takes approximately eight minutes per Gbyte when there is no other activity on the array controller. During a rebuild, normal activity can continue, although performance might degrade. The degree to which performance degrades is determined by the rebuild priority set for the controller. (To change the rebuild priority, see “Disk Array Tab” on page 189.)

6. To check the progress of the rebuilding process, choose View → Array Admin Progress or click the Progress Indicator icon in the upper right corner of the window.

The Controller Array Progress window is displayed that shows the completion percentage of the rebuild.

If there are array activities (such as initialization, rebuild, or parity check) occurring on multiple controllers, the Select Controller Progress window is displayed first.

7. Select the controller whose progress you want to view and click OK.

The Controller Array Progress window is displayed and shows the array rebuilding status for that controller.

▼ To Restore a Logical Drive Configuration

This section describes how to restore the array configuration information from a backup file. You must have saved a backup file using the Save command as explained in [“Configuration File” on page 62](#). If the array controller and its drives are damaged, you can restore the array configuration to a new controller without having to completely reconfigure the storage array.

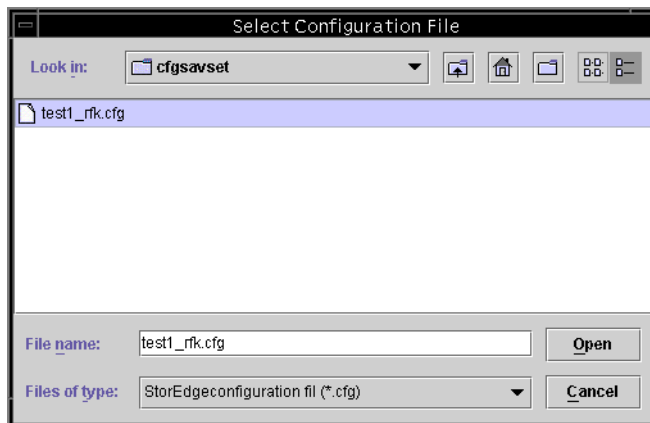


Caution – Restore the array configuration from a file only if the configuration file is current. Data loss will result from restoring an outdated or incorrect configuration.

If you are sure that the backup file contains the correct array configuration information, continue with the following procedure to restore the configuration.

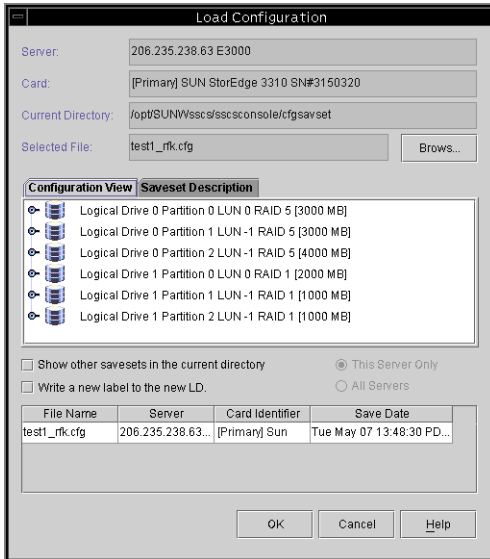
1. **Select the controller for the appropriate array.**
2. **Choose Configuration → Load Configuration.**

The Select Configuration File window is displayed.



3. **Specify the name and location of the backup configuration file and click Open.**

The Load Configuration window is displayed. To see a tree-view representation of the configuration, click the Configuration View tab.



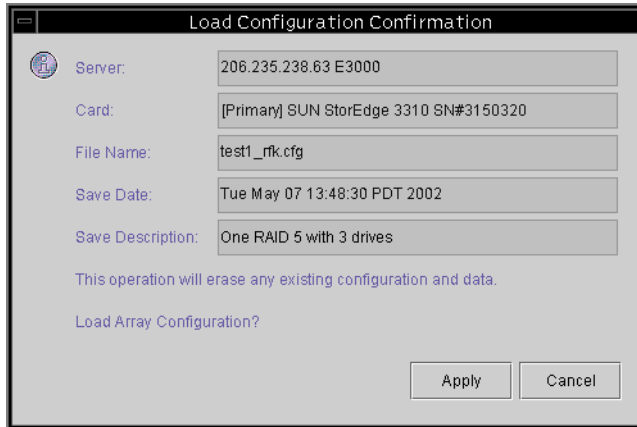
The Saveset Description tab displays the description of the file that was specified when the configuration file was created.



4. (Solaris OS only). If you want the logical drive(s) to be automatically labeled, which enables the OS to use the drive, click **Write a new label to the new LD**.
5. To load the saved configuration, select **OK**.

The Load Configuration Confirmation window is displayed.

Carefully review the information presented in the Load Configuration Confirmation window before making a decision to continue.



6. Click **Apply** to load this configuration or click **Cancel** to terminate this function.

Apply causes the configuration operation to continue, and a progress window is displayed.

Note – Do *not* initialize LUN(s) after restoring the array configuration backup file contents.

Controller Maintenance Options

Controller maintenance options include shutting down the controller, muting the controller beeper, bringing a failed controller back online, displaying performance statistics, and determining controller boot time. Downloading firmware options are also included in the Controller Maintenance Options window. For information on downloading firmware, see [“Updating the Configuration” on page 149](#).

▼ To Reset the Controller

Whenever you make changes to the controller parameters, you are asked if you want to reset the controller so that the changes take effect. If you are making multiple changes, you might not want to stop and reset the controller after each change. Use the Reset the Controller option to manually reset the controller after making multiple parameter changes.

1. **Select any storage icon in the main window.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
3. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**

The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.

4. **Click Reset the Controller.**

Note – Resetting the controller on a Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array can result in host-side error messages, such as parity error and synchronous error messages. No action is required and the condition corrects itself as soon as reinitialization of the controller is complete.

▼ To Shut Down the Controller

Whenever the array is powered off, you need to first shut down the controller to ensure that write cache is flushed to disk so that the backup battery (if present) is not drained by the cache memory.



Caution – Shutting down the controller causes the array to stop responding to I/O requests from the host. This might result in data loss unless all I/O activity is suspended by halting all applications that are accessing the array, and unmounting any file systems that are mounted from the array. In redundant-controller configurations, shutting down the controller affects all LUNs on both controllers.

1. **Select any storage icon in the main window.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
3. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**
The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.
4. **Click Shut Down the Controller.**

▼ To Mute the Controller Beeper

When an event occurs that causes the controller to beep, for example, when a logical drive fails, during a rebuild, or when adding a physical drive, you can mute the controller beeper in one of two ways.

1. **Select the controller icon in the main window.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
3. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**
The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.
4. **Click Mute Controller Beeper.**
or
 1. **Select the desired controller icon in the main window.**
 2. **Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.**
 3. **Select Change Controller Parameters.**
 4. **Select Mute Beeper.**

Note – If the alarm is caused by a failed component, muting the beeper has no effect. You need to push the Reset button on the right ear of the array. See “[View Enclosure](#)” on page 95 for more information about component failure alarms.

▼ To Bring a Failed Controller Back Online

If a controller fails, bring it back online in one of two ways.

1. **Select the controller icon in the main window.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
3. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**

The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.

4. **Click Deassert Failed Redundant Controller.**

or

1. **Select the controller icon in the main window.**
2. **Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.**
3. **Select Change Controller Parameters.**
4. **Select the Redundancy tab.**
5. **From the Set Controller Config field, select Redundant Deassert Reset.**

▼ To Display Performance Statistics

Using Performance Statistics, you can determine the data transfer rate, that is, the speed the array is running at.

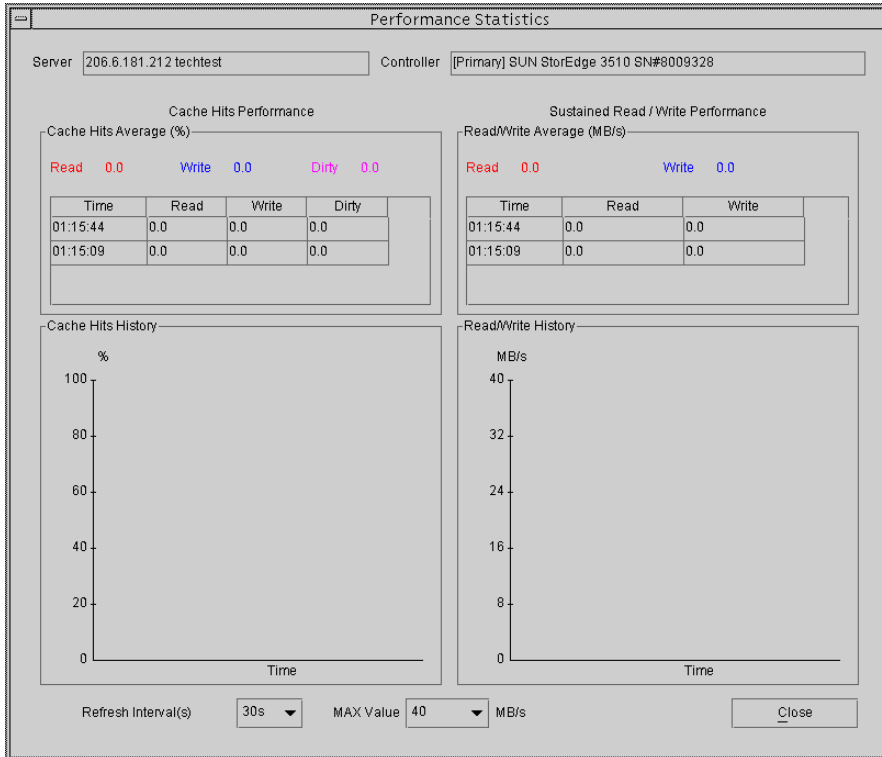
1. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
2. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**

The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.

3. **Click Performance Statistics.**

The Performance Statistics window is displayed.

Note – The Performance Statistics window displays information for the active controller only. The secondary controller does not report statistics to the primary controller due to a limitation of the firmware architecture. This limitation results in the software displaying only statistics for primary LUNs and the cache.



▼ To Get Controller Boot Time

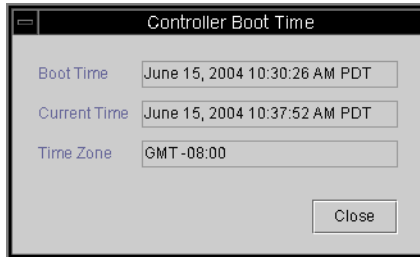
To provide you with a point of reference when investigating controller events, you can determine when the controller was last powered up or reset.

1. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
2. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**

The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.

3. Click Get Controller Boot Time.

The Controller Boot Time window is displayed. The controller date, time, and time zone are set using the firmware application. Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for information about setting the controller date and time.



▼ To Convert a Dual Controller Array to a Single Controller Array

If one controller fails in a dual array controller configuration, you might want to run a single controller for an extended period of time so that the array does not display as degraded in the console.

1. Make sure you know the serial number of the controller being removed.

You can check the event log for the failed controller's serial number or check the console and make a note of the primary controller's serial number.

2. Change the remaining controller's redundancy setting to disabled.

You must use the firmware application to disable redundancy on the controller. Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for your array for information about accessing the firmware application, and then from the Main Menu, choose "view and edit Peripheral devices → Set Peripheral Device Entry → Redundant Controller – Primary → Disable redundant controller."

3. Stop the agent.

For information about how to stop the agent, see the chapter for your OS in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*.

4. Change to `/var/opt/SUNWsscs/ssagent` and edit the file `sscontlr.txt`.

The very last line in the file contains the serial numbers of both controllers. Remove the failed controller's serial number from this line.


```
# RAID_CONTROLLER=Enable:3197861:3179746
```

5. Start the agent as explained in the installation chapter for your OS.
6. Rescan the console if it was open during this procedure.
7. In a single-controller configuration, to avoid the possibility of data corruption, disable Write Back Cache.
See ["Cache Tab" on page 185](#) for information on disabling Write Back Cache.

Updating the Configuration

Refer to this chapter when you want to change the current configuration or add to it. This chapter describes the following tasks:

- [“To Add a Logical Drive or Logical Volume From New Logical Drives” on page 150](#)
- [“To Add a Logical Volume From Existing Logical Drives” on page 155](#)
- [“To Delete a Logical Drive or Logical Volume” on page 157](#)
- [“To Create a Partition” on page 160](#)
- [“To Delete a Partition” on page 162](#)
- [“To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume” on page 164](#)
- [“To Add Physical Drives to an Existing Logical Drive” on page 167](#)
- [“To Copy and Replace Physical Drives” on page 168](#)
- [“To Scan in New Hard Drives \(SCSI only\)” on page 170](#)
- [“To Download RAID Controller Firmware” on page 172](#)
- [“To Upgrade Firmware and Boot Record” on page 175](#)
- [“To Upgrade Firmware on Hard Drives” on page 176](#)
- [“To Upgrade Firmware on SAF-TE/SES Devices” on page 177](#)
- [“To Change Controller Parameters” on page 179](#)
- [“To Save Changed Values” on page 180](#)
- [“To View Environmental Status for the Controller” on page 197](#)
- [“To Mute the Controller Beeper” on page 201](#)
- [“To Assign or Change Standby Drives” on page 202](#)
- [“To Edit a Server Entry” on page 204](#)
- [“To Update the ODM” on page 206](#)

The Configuration menu commands and tool icons might be temporarily disabled if an administration process, such as parity checking, is running. The menu command is also shown as deactivated when the console is refreshing its inventory on the server. A satellite dish symbol is attached to the server icon during the refresh process .

Note – To use the Configuration options, you must log into the `ssconfig` security level of the software with the `ssconfig` password. When you are finished with the configuration activities, log back into the monitoring level of the program.

▼ To Add a Logical Drive or Logical Volume From New Logical Drives

Use this option to add one or more logical drives to an existing configuration of RAID sets, or to add a logical volume from *new* logical drives. To add a logical volume from *existing* logical drives, see [“To Add a Logical Volume From Existing Logical Drives” on page 155](#).

Note – Logical volumes are unsuited to some modern configurations such as Sun Cluster environments, and do not work in those configurations. Use logical drives instead. For more information, see [“Logical Volumes” on page 38](#).

Note – If the logical drive is going to be larger than 253 Gbyte, see [“To Prepare for Logical Drives Larger Than 253 Gbyte” on page 49](#).

1. **Select the array that you want to configure.**
2. **Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.**

Note – This selection is inactive unless you have selected an array with available physical drives.

3. **Select Add LDs/LVs to the Current Configuration from the Custom Configuration Options window.**
4. **Verify that the server and controller displayed at the top of the window are correct.**
5. **Select a disk you want to be included in the new logical drive and click Add Disk.**
If you make a mistake or change your mind, select the drive and click Remove Disk.

6. Select a RAID Level.

For definitions of RAID levels, see [“RAID Basics” on page 209](#).

7. Select the Host channel and ID to which you would like the new logical drive to be mapped to from the Channel and the ID list boxes.

8. Set the Max Drive Size.

The Max Drive Size displays the total capacity of each disk. A smaller logical drive can be created by decreasing this value.

Note – If you do not change the Max Drive Size but you do change the Partition Size, a new partition is created at the specified partition size. The remaining logical drive size capacity moves to the last partition. Remaining capacity can be used later by expanding the drive (as explained in [“To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume” on page 164](#)). The drive capacity is no longer editable after a partition is created.

Note – If you want to create another logical drive on the same controller, click New LD. The logical drive you just defined is created and you are returned to the top of the window, enabling you to create another logical drive. For the maximum number of logical drives supported, see [TABLE 4-1](#).

9. (Solaris OS only). If you want the new logical drive to be automatically labeled, which enables the OS to use the drive, click Write a new label to the new LD.

10. To use the logical drive immediately, select On-line Initialization.

Because logical drive initialization can take up to several hours, you can choose to initialize a logical drive on-line.

On-line initialization enables you to begin configuring and using the logical drive before initialization is complete. However, because the controller is building the logical drive while performing I/O operations, initializing a logical drive on-line requires more time than off-line initialization.

If you do not select On-line initialization, you can configure and use the drive only after initialization is complete. Because the controller is building the logical drive without having to also perform I/O operations, off-line initialization requires less time than on-line initialization.

Note – On-line Initialization does not apply to logical volumes.

11. Select the stripe size.

Select Default to assign the stripe size per Optimization mode as specified in [TABLE 8-1](#), or select a different stripe size.

TABLE 8-1 Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode

RAID Level	Sequential I/O	Random I/O
0, 1, 5	128	32
3	16	4

Once the stripe size is selected and data is written to logical drives, the only way to change the stripe size of an individual logical drive is to back up all its data to another location, delete the logical drive, and create a logical drive with the stripe size that you want.

12. Specify Default, Write-through, or Write-back as the Write Policy for the logical drive.

The write policy determines when cached data is written to the disk drives. The ability to hold data in cache while it is being written to disk can increase storage device speed during sequential reads. Write policy options include write-through and write-back.

Using write-through cache, the controller writes the data to the disk drive before signaling the host OS that the process is complete. Write-through cache has lower write operation and throughput performance than write-back cache, but it is the safer strategy, with minimum risk of data loss on power failure. Because a battery module is installed, power is supplied to the data cached in memory and the data can be written to disk when power is restored.

Using write-back cache, the controller receives the data to write to disk, stores it in the memory buffer, and immediately sends the host OS a signal that the write operation is complete, before the data is actually written to the disk drive. Write-back caching improves the performance of write operations and the throughput of the controller card. Write-back cache is enabled by default.

Note – The setting you specify in the Write Back field on the Cache tab of the Change Controller Parameters window is the default global cache setting for *all* logical drives. (See [“Cache Tab”](#) on page 185.)

13. Click OK.

14. To add this logical drive to a logical volume, click New LD and see [“To Add a Logical Drive to a Logical Volume”](#) on page 153.

15. When you are satisfied with the selections on this window, and do not want to define another logical drive, click **Commit**.

A confirmation window is displayed showing the new configuration.

16. Click **OK** to accept the configuration or **Cancel** to return to the console.

Note – You cannot change a logical drive configuration after you click **OK**.

Note – During initialization LD/LV size is displayed as 0 Mbyte.

17. (HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

18. (IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206](#).

▼ To Add a Logical Drive to a Logical Volume

A logical volume is composed of two or more logical drives and can be divided into a maximum of 32 partitions. During operation, the host sees a nonpartitioned logical volume or a partition of a logical volume as one single physical drive.

Note – Logical volumes are unsuited to some modern configurations such as Sun Cluster environments, and do not work in those configurations. Use logical drives instead. For more information, see [“Logical Volumes” on page 38](#).

1. Create a logical drive as described in [Step 1–Step 15 in “To Add a Logical Drive or Logical Volume From New Logical Drives” on page 150](#).

Note – Do not partition the logical drive that you are adding to the logical volume. A logical drive that has been partitioned cannot be added to a logical volume.

2. **Before you click Commit, to add the logical drive to a logical volume, click Add to LV.**

The logical drive is added to the LV Definition box. The total size of the logical volume is displayed in the Available Size (MB) field.

Note – Because the logical volume has not been partitioned yet, the Part Size (MB) and the Available Size (MB) are equal. A single logical volume is considered to be a single partition.

Note – Mixing SATA and FC logical drives to create a logical volume is not supported.

3. **To create another logical drive to add to the logical volume, click New LD.**
4. **Create the logical drive and add it to the logical volume by clicking Add to LV.**
Repeat this step for every logical drive you want to add to the logical volume.
5. **To create a partition, see [“To Create a Partition” on page 160](#).**
6. **When you have finished adding logical drives to the logical volume, to create another logical volume or an individual logical drive, click Commit LV.**

When you are finished creating logical volumes and do not want to create an individual logical drive, click Commit.

Note – When you are finished creating logical volumes and want to exit the New Configuration window, if you accidentally click Commit LV instead of Commit, you will have to create another logical drive; otherwise, you have to click Cancel and configure the logical volume again.

7. **(HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.**

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

8. **(IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206](#).**

Media Scan

A firmware menu option called Media Scan at Power-Up specifies whether media scan runs automatically following a controller power-cycle, reset, or after logical drive initialization. This setting is disabled by default. For more information, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide*.

To determine whether or not media scan is running, see the event log. For more information on the event log window, see [“Event Log Window” on page 112](#). For more information about media scan, see [“To Scan Physical Disks for Bad Blocks \(Media Scan\)” on page 132](#).

▼ To Add a Logical Volume From Existing Logical Drives

Note – Logical volumes are unsuited to some modern configurations such as Sun Cluster environments, and do not work in those configurations. Use logical drives instead. For more information, see [“Logical Volumes” on page 38](#).

Note – Before you can add a logical volume from existing logical drives, you must unmap the logical drives.

1. **Select the array that you want to configure.**
2. **Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.**

Note – This selection is inactive unless you have selected an array with available physical drives.

3. **Select Add LDs/LVs to the Current Configuration from the Custom Configuration Options window.**
4. **Verify that the server and controller displayed at the top of the window are correct.**
5. **Select Use existing LDs to create LVs.**

If you do not see any logical drives listed under Select disks for logical drive, the logical drives have not been unmapped and therefore are unavailable to select. You must unmap the logical drives first.

6. **Select a logical drive and click Add to LV.**

7. When you have finished adding logical drives to the logical volume, to create another logical volume or an individual logical drive, click Commit LV.

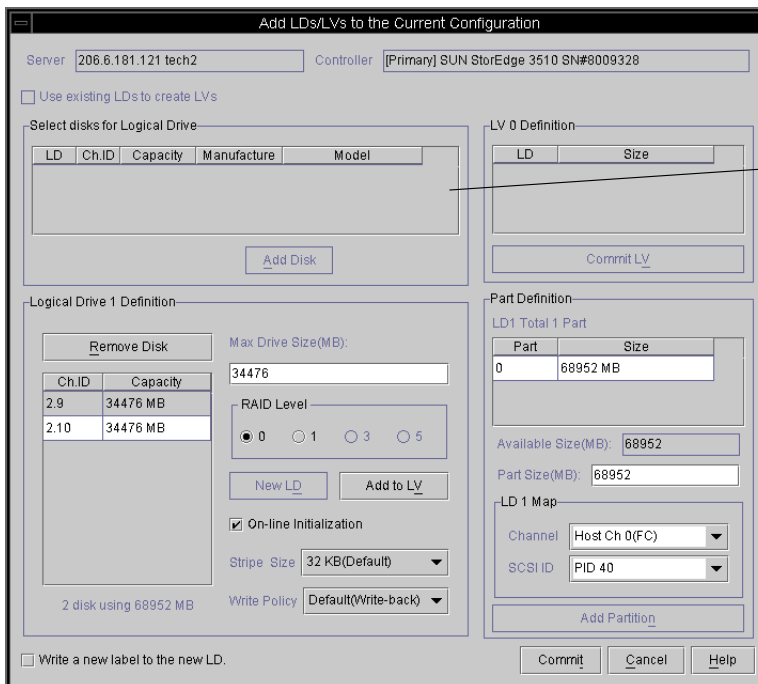
When you have finished creating logical volumes and do not want to create an individual logical drive, click Commit.

Note – When you are finished creating logical volumes and want to exit the New Configuration window, if you accidentally click Commit LV instead of Commit, you will have to create another logical drive; otherwise, you have to click Cancel and configure the logical volume again.

8. (HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

9. (IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206](#).



If no logical drives are listed after you select Use existing LDs to create LVs, the logical drives have not been unmapped. You must first unmap the logical drives.

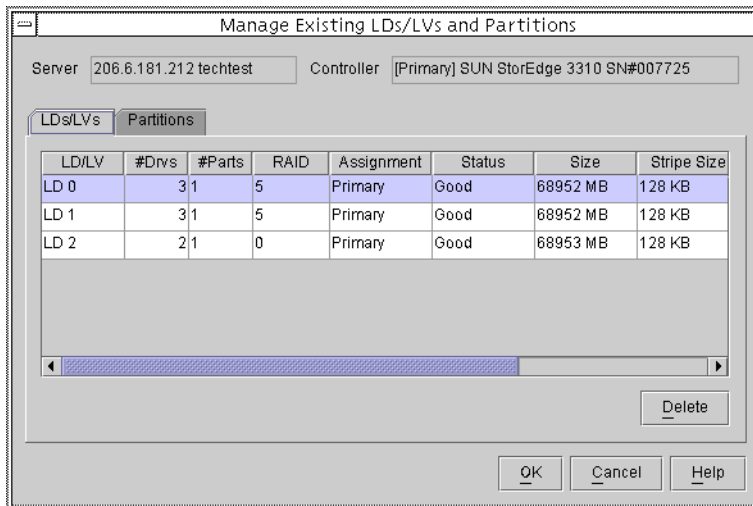
▼ To Delete a Logical Drive or Logical Volume

Use this option to delete one or more logical drives, or to delete logical volumes from an existing configuration of RAID sets.

Note – Before you can delete a logical drive or logical volume, you need to unmap all assigned LUNs.

1. Select the array that contains the logical drives or logical volumes you want to delete.
2. To view the existing logical drives or logical volumes, select **View** → **Logical Drive**.
3. If any of the logical drives or logical volumes have host LUN assignments, proceed to [Step 4](#) to delete them; if they do not, proceed to [Step 8](#).
4. Choose **Configuration** → **Custom Configure**.
5. Select **Change Host LUN Assignments**.
6. Select the host LUNs attached to the logical drive or logical volume you want to unmap, and click **Unmap Host LUN**.
7. Click **Close**.
The console refreshes and the logical drive is displayed as “UNMAPPED.”
8. Choose **Configuration** → **Custom Configure**.
9. Select **Manage Existing LDs/LVs and Partitions**.
10. Select the **LDs/LVs** tab.
11. Select the logical drive or logical volume you want to delete, click **Delete**, and click **OK**.

When deleting a logical volume, after you click Delete, the logical volume is deleted, but the logical drives that make up the logical drive are displayed.



12. Click OK in the Confirm Configuration Operation window to complete the operation, and click Close.

The console refreshes and the array is redisplayed no longer showing the logical drive.

13. (HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

14. (IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206.](#)

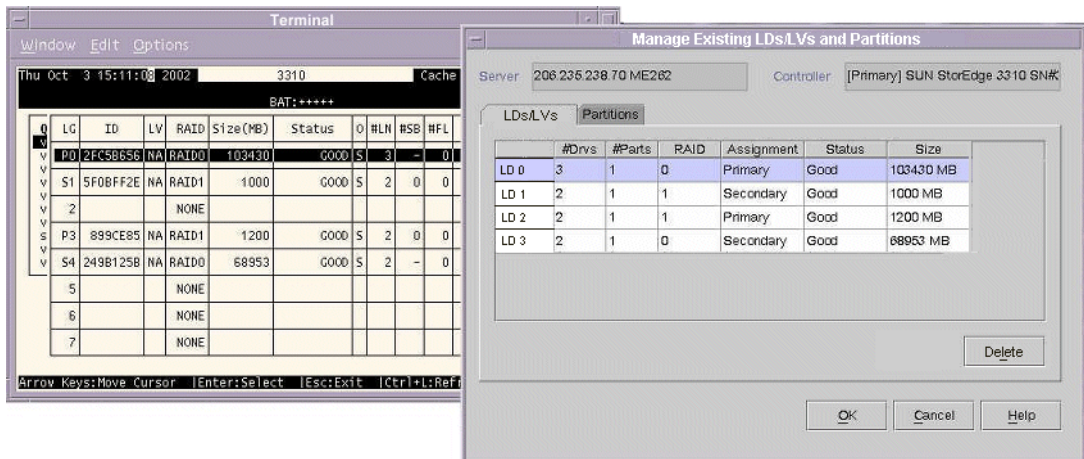
The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number

The logical drive/logical volume number referenced with each logical drive is dynamic; it changes when logical drives are created/deleted. This number is displayed in the logical drive (LDs/LVs) field of several windows including Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs, Change Host LUN Assignments, Manage Existing LDs/LVs and Partitions, and the main window.

Used strictly as a placeholder that enables you to *visually* keep track of logical drives and logical volumes, this number is insignificant to the controller. That is, the controller does not report on the logical drives or logical volumes according to this number. For example, if four logical drives exist, and LD2 is deleted, the existing LD3 dynamically changes to LD2, and LD4 changes to LD3. Only the LD/LV number changes; all LUN mapping and data on the logical drives remains unchanged.

Because the controller reports on the *total number* of logical drives, which in this case is three, the actual LD/LV number as displayed in the LD/LV field is irrelevant. In this example, if a new logical drive is created, it takes the LD number of the logical drive that was deleted, and the controller reports that there are a total of four logical drives. All existing logical drives return to their original primary/secondary designation.

Note – As shown in the following example, the LG number on the firmware terminal menu option View and Edit Logical Drives is *not* visually dynamic. After a logical drive is deleted, you see an empty placeholder. When a logical drive is created from the console or from the terminal, this empty placeholder is filled with the new logical drive.



The LD field in the Manage Existing LDs/LVs and Partitions window (right) is dynamic; it changes when logical drives are created/deleted. In this example, LD2 was deleted and LD4 became LD3 and LD 2 became LD1. In the terminal menu option View and Edit Logical Drives (left), the LG field is not dynamic; an empty slot indicates that LD2 was deleted.

▼ To Create a Partition

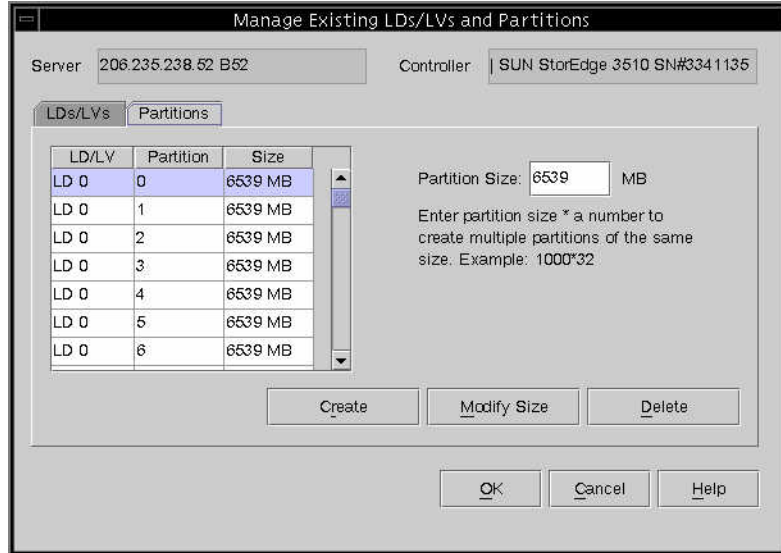
Note – Before you can create a partition, you need to unmap all assigned LUNs.

1. Select the array that contains the logical drive(s) you want to partition.
2. View the logical drive(s) you want to create partition(s) on.
3. If any of these logical drives have host LUN assignments, proceed to [Step 4](#); if they do not, proceed to [Step 8](#).
4. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.
5. Select Change Host LUN Assignments.
6. Select the Host LUN(s) that are attached to the logical drive(s) you want to partition, and click Unmap Host LUN.
7. Click OK, and then click Close.
8. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.
9. Select Manage Existing LDs/LVs and Partitions from the Custom Configuration Options window.
10. Select the Partitions tab.
11. Select a logical drive or logical volume you want to partition.
12. Specify the Partition Size in Mbyte and click Create.


To create multiple partitions of the same size, click Add Partition as many times as partitions you want to create. You can also type the partition size in the Part Size field and multiply (*) it by the number of partitions you want to create, for example 100*128. Any remaining Mbyte is added to the last partition.

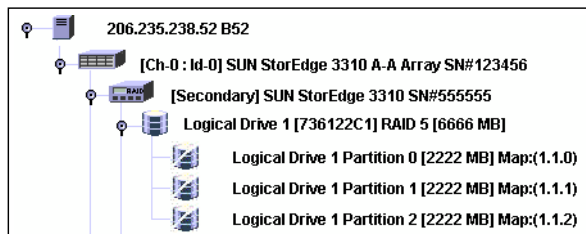
As you add partitions, the remaining capacity displayed in Available Size (MB) decreases by the amount of the partition size.
13. To change the size of a partition you have already created, select the logical drive or logical volume, and click Modify Size.

- Specify the new size (in Mbyte) in the Partition Size field, and click OK.



- Click OK in the Confirm Configuration Operation window to complete the operation, and click Close.

After a logical drive or logical volume has been partitioned, when you open a logical drive or logical volume on the main window, the partitions are displayed .



- (HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC` disk command.

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

17. (IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206.](#)

The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number

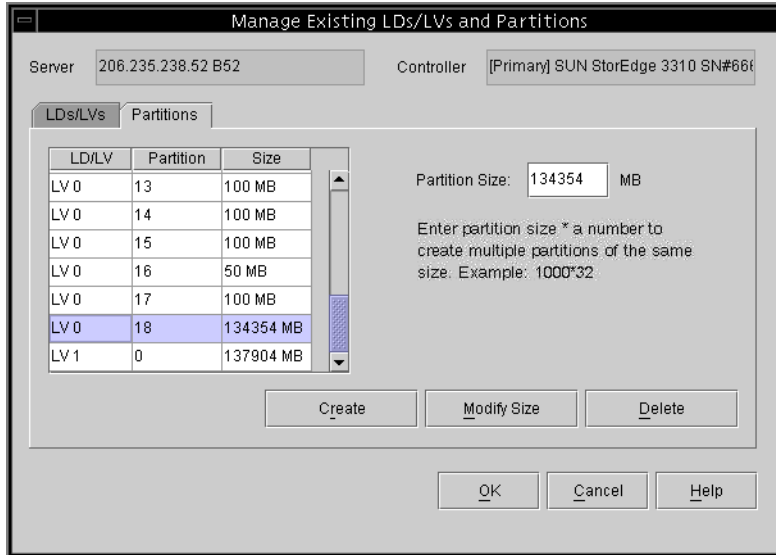
For important information regarding the logical drive/logical volume number displayed in the LDs/LVs field in the Manage Existing LDs/LVs and Partitions window, see [“The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number” on page 158.](#)

▼ To Delete a Partition

Note – To delete a partition on a logical drive or logical volume, you need to unmap all assigned LUNs.

1. Select the array that contains the logical drives or logical volumes for which you want to delete the partitions.
2. View the logical drives or logical volumes for which you want to delete the partitions.
If any of the partitions on the drive have host LUN mappings, proceed to [Step 3](#); if they do not, proceed to [Step 7](#).
3. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.
4. Select Change Host LUN Assignments.
5. Select the LUNs that are mapped to the logical drive’s or logical volume’s partitions that you want to delete, and click Unmap Host LUN.
6. Click OK, and then click Close.
7. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.
8. Select Manage Existing LDs/LVs and Partitions from the Custom Configuration Options window.
9. Select the Partitions tab.
10. Select a partition to modify or delete by starting from the last partition within the logical drive or logical volume.

11. Click Delete, and then click OK.



12. Click OK in the Confirm Configuration Operation window to complete the operation, and click Close.
13. (HP-UX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to run the `ioscan -fnC disk` command.

Note – If you used System Administrator Manager (sam) to unmount the file system, make sure it is closed before running the `ioscan` command.

14. (IBM AIX OS only). To ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM) as explained in [“Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host” on page 206](#).

▼ To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume

Use this option to expand the capacity of an existing logical drive, or to expand the capacity of a logical volume. For example, you might originally have had a 72-Gbyte drive of which only 36 Gbyte was selected to build a logical drive. To use the remaining 36 Gbyte, you need to expand the logical drive. RAID levels 0, 1, 3, and 5 support expansion.

Note – To expand a logical volume, you must first expand the logical drives that make up the logical volume.

1. Select the array that you want to configure.
2. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.
3. Select Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs from the Custom Configuration Options window.
4. Select the logical drive or logical volume you want to expand.
5. Select the Expand LD/LV tab.
6. Specify the capacity in Mbyte by which you want to expand the logical drive or logical volume in the Maximum Drive Expand Capacity field, and click OK.

The capacity shown in the Maximum Available Drive Free Capacity field is the maximum available free disk space per physical drive, based on the smallest physical drive in the logical drive. The capacity you specify is added to *each* physical drive in the logical drive.

As described in the following examples, the total amount of capacity that is added to the logical drive is calculated automatically based on the RAID level.

Note – Spare drives are not included when expanding a logical drive. Do not include spare drives when calculating maximum drive expand capacity.

- RAID 0 – Multiply the amount entered in the Maximum Drive Expand Capacity field by the total number of physical drives contained in the logical drive. For example, 100 Mbyte x 3 = 300 Mbyte total capacity added to the logical drive.
- RAID 1 – Multiply the amount entered in the Maximum Drive Expand Capacity field by the total number of physical drives contained in the logical drive, and then divide by two to account for mirroring. For example, 100 Mbyte x 4 = 400 Mbyte. 400/2 = 200 Mbyte total capacity added to the logical drive.

- RAID 3 and 5 – Multiply the amount entered in the Maximum Drive Expand Capacity field (c) by the total number of physical drives contained in the logical drive, and then subtract c to account for parity. For example, if $c = 100$, 100 Mbyte $\times 3 = 300$ Mbyte. 300 Mbyte - 100 Mbyte = 200 Mbyte total capacity added to the logical drive.

If you know the total maximum drive capacity by which you want to expand a logical drive, perform the following calculations based on the RAID level to determine the amount to enter in the Maximum Drive Expand Capacity field:

- RAID 0 – Divide the total maximum drive capacity by the total number of physical drives contained in the logical drive. For example, if you want to add a total of 100 Mbyte to a logical drive that contains four physical drives, $100 \text{ Mbyte} / 4 = 25$ Mbyte maximum drive expand capacity.
- RAID 1 – Divide the total number of physical drives contained in the logical drive by two to get n . Then divide the maximum drive capacity by n . For example, if you want to add a total of 100 Mbyte to a logical drive that contains four physical drives, $4 / 2 = 2$. $100 / 2 = 50$ Mbyte maximum drive expand capacity.
- RAID 3 and 5 – Subtract a single drive from the total number of physical drives to get n . Then divide the total maximum drive capacity by n . For example, if you want to add a total of 100 Mbyte to a logical drive that contains five physical drives, $5 - 1 = 4$. $100 / 4 = 50$ Mbyte maximum drive expand capacity.

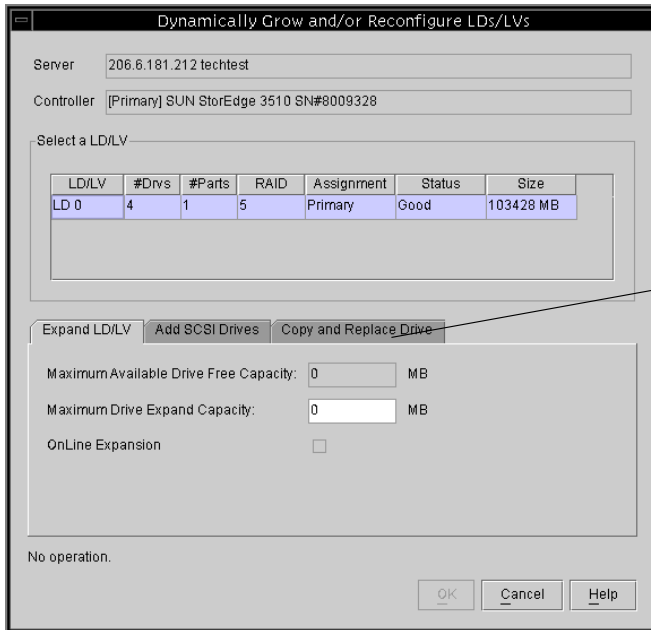
Note – The Maximum Drive Expand Capacity cannot exceed the Maximum Available Drive Free Capacity.

7. To use the logical drive immediately, select OnLine Expansion.

Online expansion enables you to use the logical drive before expansion is complete. However, because the controller is building the logical drive while performing I/O operations, expanding a logical drive online requires more time than offline expansion.

If you do not select OnLine Expansion, you can use the drive only after expansion is complete. Because the controller is building the logical drive without having to also perform I/O operations, offline expansion requires less time than online expansion.

Note – The Online Expansion option is not available when expanding logical volumes.



If you used the full capacity of the logical drive when it was created, 0 is displayed; there is no room to expand unless you add another logical drive.

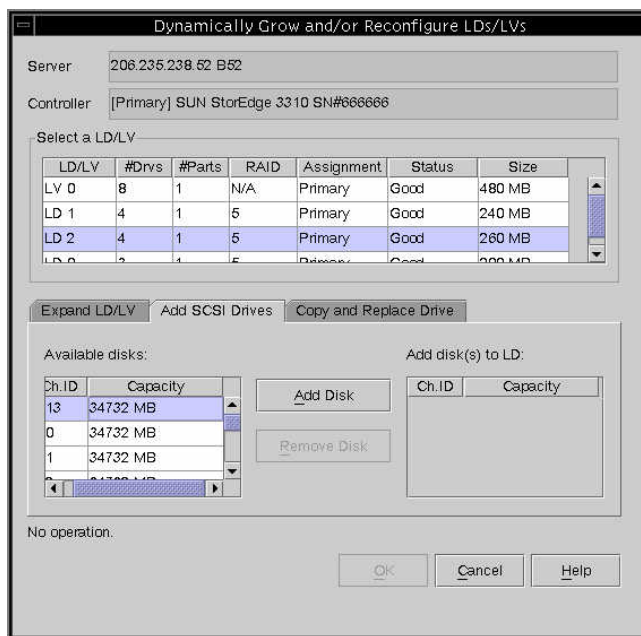
8. Click OK in the Confirm Configuration Operation window to complete the operation, and click Close.

The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number

For important information regarding the logical drive/logical volume number displayed in the LD/LV field in the Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs window, see [“The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number”](#) on page 158.

▼ To Add Physical Drives to an Existing Logical Drive

1. Select the array that you want to configure.
2. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.
3. Select Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs from the Custom Configuration Options window.
4. Select the logical drive to which you want to add a drive.
5. Select the Add SCSI Drives tab.
6. From the list of Available disks, select the drive you want to add to the logical drive.
7. Click Add Disk.
The drive is moved to the Add disk(s) to LD list.
If you make a mistake or change your mind, select the disk from the Add disk(s) to LD list and click Remove.
8. When you are finished adding the drives, click OK.



9. Click OK in the Confirm Configuration Operation window to complete the operation, and click Close.

The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number

For important information regarding the logical drive/logical volume number displayed in the LD/LV field in the Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs window, see [“The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number”](#) on page 158.

▼ To Copy and Replace Physical Drives

You can copy and replace existing physical drives with drives of the same or higher capacity. Because the logical drive uses the capacity size of its smallest drive, *all* drives must be replaced with drives of the same or higher capacity. For example, as shown [FIGURE 8-1](#), a logical drive that originally contains three 36-Gbyte member drives can be replaced with new 73-Gbyte member drives.

Note – To use the additional capacity provided by drives with higher capacity, you need to expand the capacity as explained in [“To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume”](#) on page 164.

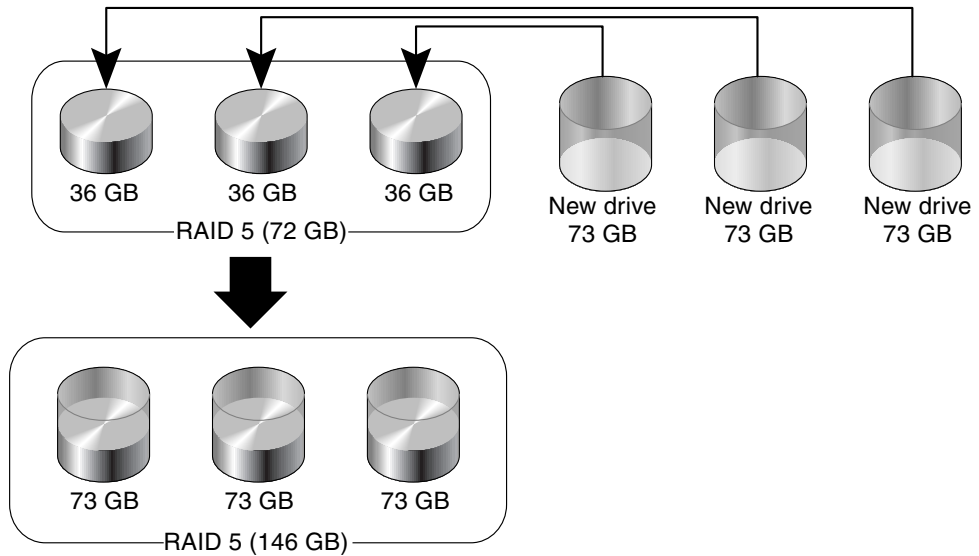
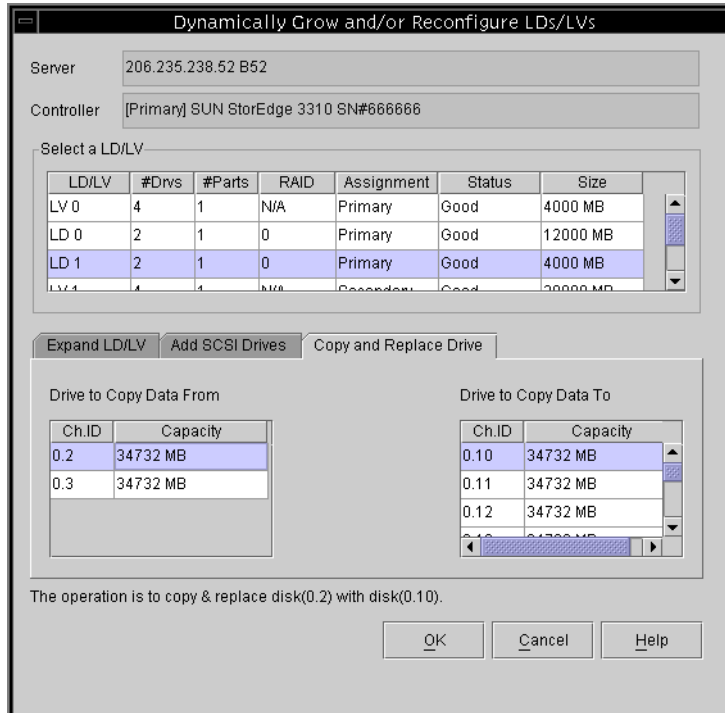


FIGURE 8-1 Copying and Replacing Physical Drives

1. Select the array that you want to configure.
2. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.
3. Select Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs from the Custom Configuration Options window.
4. Select the logical drive for which you are going to perform the copy and replace operation.
5. Select the Copy and Replace Drive tab on the Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs window.
6. From the Drive to Copy Data From list, select the new hard drive.
7. From the Drive to Copy Data To list, select the hard drive that is going to be replaced, and click OK.



8. Click OK in the Confirm Configuration Operation window to complete the operation, and click Close.
9. When the operation is complete, close the progress window.

10. To use the additional capacity provided by the new drives, follow the instructions in [“To Expand the Capacity of a Logical Drive or Logical Volume”](#) on page 164.

The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number

For important information regarding the logical drive/logical volume number displayed in the LD/LV field in the Dynamically Grow and/or Reconfigure LDs/LVs window, see [“The Logical Drive/Logical Volume Number”](#) on page 158.

▼ To Scan in New Hard Drives (SCSI only)

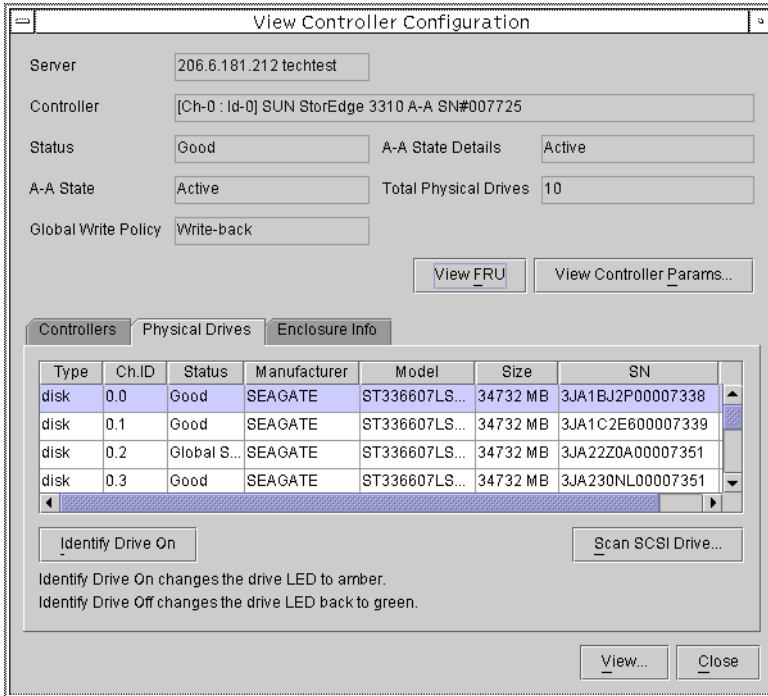
When a SCSI array is powered on, the controller scans all physical drives that are connected through drive channels. Unlike FC and SATA arrays, if a SCSI array has completed initialization and then a physical drive is connected, the controller does not automatically recognize the new drive until the next controller reset. This difference in behavior is due to differences between Fibre Channel and SCSI architectures and protocols.

A SCSI hard drive can be scanned in and made available without having to shut down the array by performing the following steps.

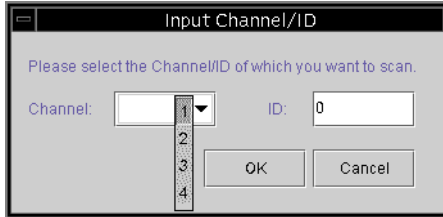
1. **Double-click the array.**
2. **The View Controller Configuration window is displayed.**

3. Select the Physical Drives tab, and click Scan SCSI Drive.

If a drive fails, the Scan SCSI Drive button is also displayed on the Physical Drive window. You can select a physical drive, select View, and click Scan SCSI Drive from the View Physical Drive window.



4. Select the correct Channel and ID that the drive was input on.



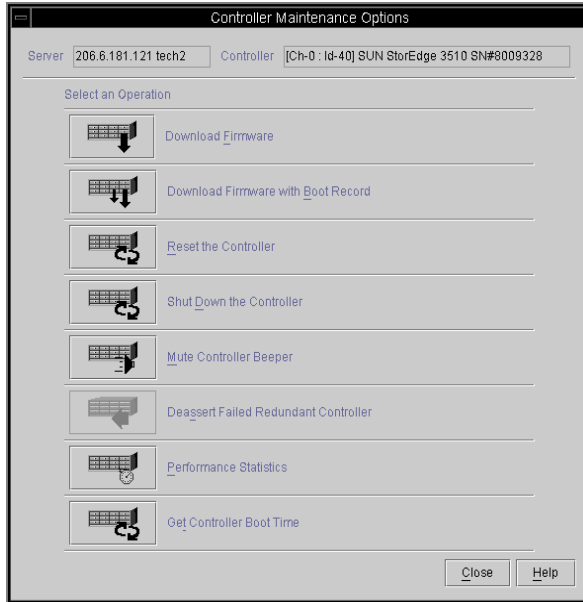
If the scan was successful, the drive is appropriately displayed in the main window and made available.

▼ To Download RAID Controller Firmware

The following procedures are used to upgrade the controller firmware for both a single and redundant controller configuration.

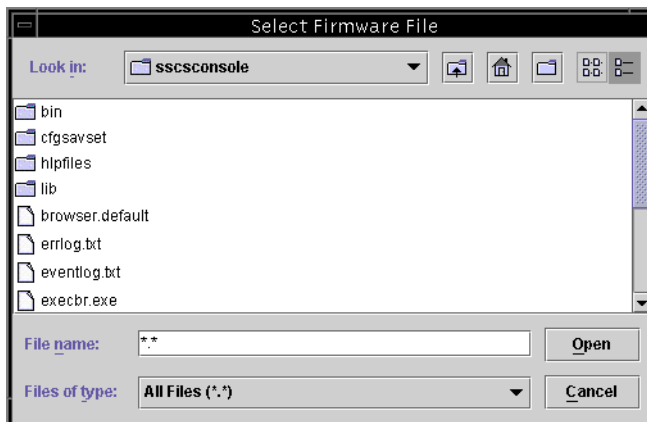
1. Select the controller.
2. Choose **Array Administration** → **Controller Maintenance**.
3. If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.

The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.

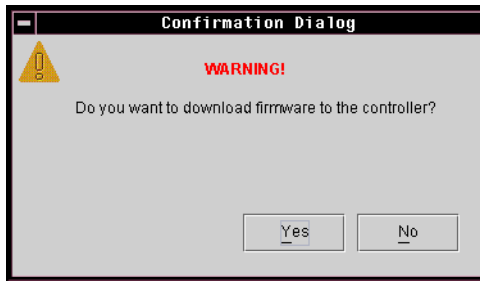


4. If upgrading firmware only (not boot record), select the **Download Firmware** option.

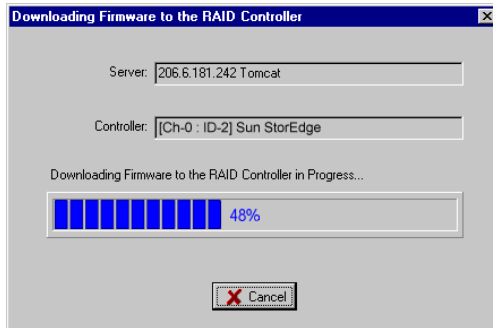
The Select Firmware File window is displayed.



5. Select the firmware you want to download, and click Open.
The Confirmation Dialog prompt is displayed.



6. Click Yes.
The firmware download to the RAID controller displays a progress bar.



7. When the progress bar reaches 100%, click OK.
8. After the firmware has been downloaded, check the settings to make sure they are configured correctly.

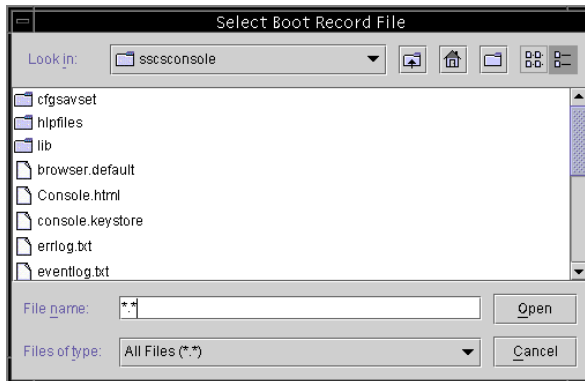
▼ To Upgrade Firmware and Boot Record

1. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
2. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**

The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.

3. **Select Download Firmware with Boot Record.**

The Select Boot Record File window is displayed.



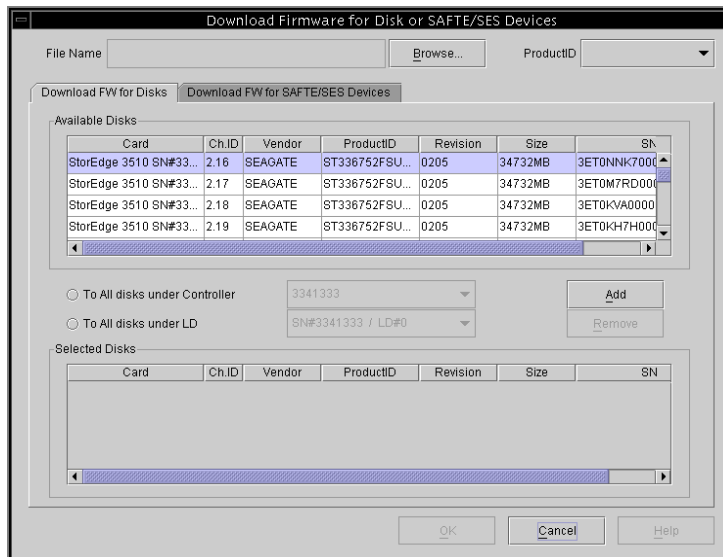
4. **Select the boot record and click Open.**
5. **Select the appropriate firmware file.**
The Select Firmware File is displayed.
6. **Click Open.**
The Confirmation Dialog window is displayed.
7. **Repeat Steps 6 through 8 in the previous subsection.**

Downloading Firmware for Devices

This option enables you to upgrade the firmware on hard drives and SAF-TE/SES devices.

▼ To Upgrade Firmware on Hard Drives

1. Select the array.
2. Choose Array Administration → Download FW for Devices.
3. Click the Download FW for Disks tab.
4. Select either To All disks under Controller, and select an array from the menu, or select To All disks under LD, and select the logical drive from the menu.
 - If there are drives that you do not want the new firmware downloaded to, select them from Selected Disks, and click Remove.
 - If there are logical drives that you want to add, select them from Available Disks and click Add.
 - If you have multiple drives that have different product IDs, make sure you select the product ID for the drive(s) to which you are downloading firmware from the Product ID list box.



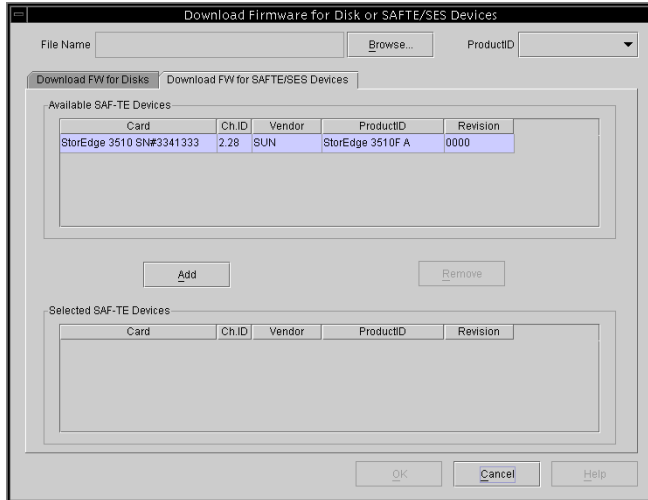
5. **Click Browse and locate the download firmware file.**
Select Open.
6. **Select the download firmware file, click Open, and click OK.**
The firmware starts to download.
7. **When the progress reaches 100%, click OK.**
8. **To verify that the firmware has downloaded successfully, select View → View Physical Drive, and make sure the firmware version has changed in the Product Revision field.**
9. **So that the console displays properly, you need to probe for new inventory.**
Select the server icon and choose View → View Server → Probe to send a command to the selected server to probe for new inventory.

▼ To Upgrade Firmware on SAF-TE/SES Devices

Note – SAF-TE devices are used by SCSI arrays and SES devices are used by Fibre Channel arrays.

1. **Select the array.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Download FW for Devices.**
3. **Click the Download FW for SAF-TE/SES Devices tab.**
 - To add a device, select it from Available SAF-TE Devices and click Add.

- To remove a device, select it from Selected SAF-TE Devices and click Remove.



4. Click **Browse** and locate the download firmware file.
5. Select the download firmware file, click **Open**, and click **OK**.
The firmware starts to download and two progress windows are displayed.
6. When the progress reaches 100%, click **OK**.
7. To verify that the firmware has downloaded successfully, select **View → View Enclosure**, and make sure the firmware version has changed in the **Firmware Rev** field.
8. So that the console displays properly, you need to probe for new inventory.
Select the server icon and choose **View → View Server** to send a command to the selected server to probe for new inventory.

▼ To Change Controller Parameters

1. Select the array.
2. Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.

If necessary, log in to the configuration level of the program with the `ssconfig` password. The Custom Configuration Options window is displayed.

3. From the Custom Configuration Options window, select Change Controller Parameters.

The Change Controller Parameters window with the Channel tab selected is displayed.

Change Controller Parameters

Server: 206.6.181.212 techtest Controller: [Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328

Controller Information

Firmware Version: 4.11E Boot Record Version: 1.31H

Serial Number: 8009328 CPU Type: PPC750

Controller Name (15 Chars Max): TECH FC Cache Size: 1024MB ECC SDRAM

Controller Unique ID (Hex format, 0=Not Defined): 004DE2 Append File ID: 411E 3510 S421F

Controller Reset Mute Beeper

Channel RS 232 Cache Disk Array Drive I/F Host I/F Redundancy Peripheral Network Protocol

Chl #	LogChl...	Mode	Type	PID	SID	DefClk	DefWid	Term	CurClk	CurWid	
0	0	Host	FIBRE	40	N/A	Auto	Serial	N/A	1.0GHz	Serial	216000C0FF804
1	1	Host	FIBRE	N/A	42	Auto	Serial	N/A	Auto	Serial	226000C0FFA04
2	0	Drive	FIBRE	14	15	Auto	Serial	N/A	2.0GHz	Serial	
3	1	Drive	FIBRE	14	15	Auto	Serial	N/A	2.0GHz	Serial	
4	2	Host	FIBRE	44	N/A	Auto	Serial	N/A	2.0GHz	Serial	256000C0FFC04
5	3	Host	FIBRE	N/A	46	Auto	Serial	N/A	Auto	Serial	266000C0FFE04

Change Settings...

OK Cancel Help

Note – For the Sun StorEdge 3510 FC array and the Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA array, the CurClk is 2.0 GHz.

- Controller Name (optional – If you want to specify a name for the controller so that you can easily identify it, select Controller Name and type the desired name. Click OK to save the change. The controller name is displayed in various applicable Sun StorEdge Configuration Service windows for convenience.
- Controller Unique ID (reserved) – The controller unique identifier is automatically set by the SCSI Accessed Fault-Tolerant Enclosure (SAF-TE) or SCSI Enclosure Services (SES) device. The controller unique identifier is used to create Ethernet addresses and WWNs, and to identify the unit for some network configurations.



Caution – Do not specify a new nonzero value unless you have replaced the chassis and the original chassis serial number must be retained. It is especially important in a Sun Cluster environment to maintain the same disk device names in a cluster. Do not change the controller unique identifier unless instructed to do so by qualified service personnel. Changes made to the Controller Unique ID do not take effect until the controller is reset.

▼ To Save Changed Values

The options on the Change Controller Parameters window specified in [TABLE 8-2](#) require that the controller be reset so that the changes take effect.

TABLE 8-2 Change Controller Parameters That Require a Reset

Option	Tab
Controller Unique ID	All
Channel Mode	Channel (Change Channel Settings)
Default Transfer Width	
Termination	
Default Sync Clock	
Write Back Cache (only in firmware later than 3.31)	Cache
Optimization	
SCSI I/O Timeout(s)	Drive I/F

TABLE 8-2 Change Controller Parameters That Require a Reset (*Continued*)

Option	Tab
Max Queued IO Count	Host I/F
Fibre Connection (FC and SATA only)	
LUNs Per Host	
Controller Configuration	Redundancy

If a change requires a controller reset, the following message is displayed in the lower left side of the window:

[Controller reset is required for changes to take effect.]

To reset the controller and save changed values, you can either select the Controller Reset check box at the time of making the change, or reset the controller later through the Controller Maintenance window (see [“To Reset the Controller” on page 143](#)). If you are making multiple changes, you might not want to stop and reset the controller after each change. If you do not select the Controller Reset check box, and the change requires a reset, when you click OK, a warning message is displayed:

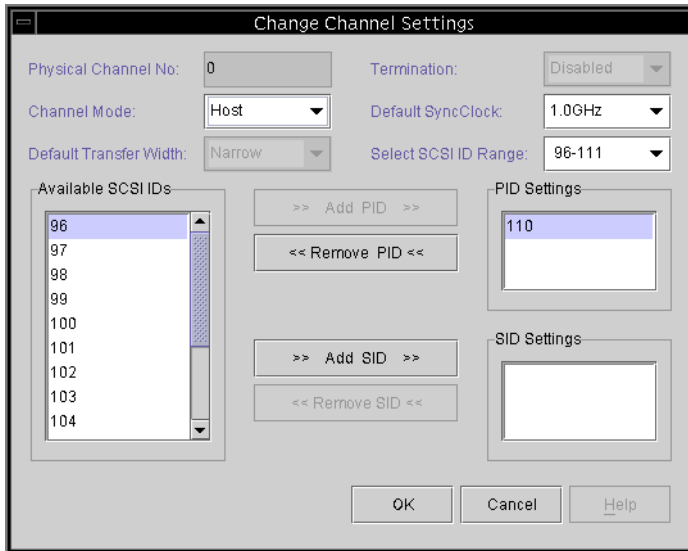


1. Select the Controller Reset check box.
 2. Make the changes and click OK.
- or
1. Do not select the Controller Reset check box.
 2. Make the changes and click OK.
 3. Reset the controller later as explained in [“To Reset the Controller” on page 143](#).

Channel Tab

1. From the Channel Settings tab, select the channel to be edited.
2. Click Change Settings.

The Change Channel Settings window is displayed. For the server to recognize the array, a host channel must have an ID assigned to a logical drive and a logical drive mapped to that host channel and ID. This window enables you to configure the host/drive channel.



3. From the Channel Mode list box, select either Host or Drive.

A Drive channel is what the drives are connected to (internal or external). A host channel is what is connected to the server. The most common reason to change the Channel Mode from Host to Drive is to attach expansion units to a RAID array.

Note – The Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array and the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array support a maximum of two host channels.

Note – Depending on the controller configuration, you might need to select both primary and secondary channel IDs as described in the following steps.



Caution – Sun StorEdge arrays are preconfigured with host, drive, and RCCOM channel settings. Sun StorEdge Configuration Service cannot configure or show RCCOM channels. Before configuring a host or drive channel, review the channel assignments using the firmware application. In a redundant-controller configuration, if the RCCOM channel settings are overwritten using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, intercontroller communication stops and unexpected results might occur. For more information, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide*.

4. From the Available SCSI IDs list box, select the primary channel ID, which is designated as PID, and click Add PID.
5. If you have two controllers installed, select a secondary channel ID from the Available SCSI IDs list box, and click Add SID.

Note – For the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array and the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array, if you add more than four host channel IDs, the LUNs Per Host ID parameter (see “Host I/F Tab” on page 192) must be set to a value less than 32.

6. For changes to take effect, reset the controller.

Changing Host ID in a Fibre or SATA Configuration

1. If you want an ID higher than 15, select the desired range from the Select SCSI Range list box.

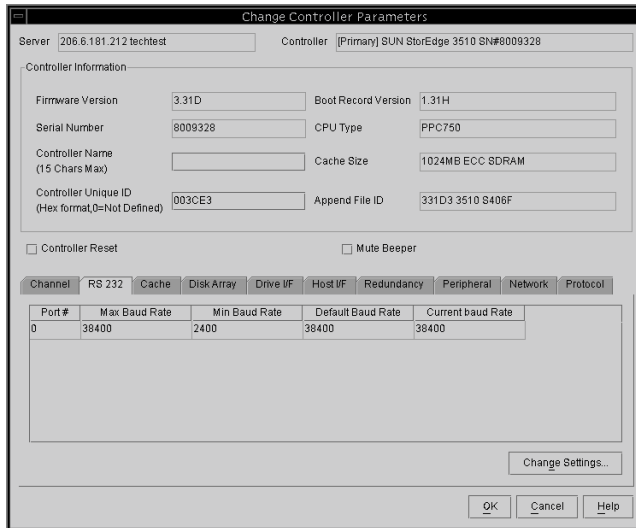
Note – Each channel's ID must be within the same range.

2. Click Remove to remove the PID or SID.
3. Once your selections have been made, click OK to redisplay the previous window.

RS 232 Tab

RS 232 parameters enable you to set the baud rate of the RS 232 connection.

1. After all channel settings have been made, from the Change Controller Parameters window, select the RS 232 tab.

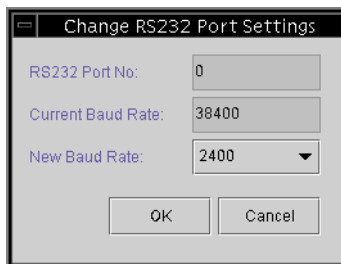


The screenshot shows the "Change Controller Parameters" window. The "Server" field is "206.6.181.212 techtest" and the "Controller" is "[Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328". Under "Controller Information", fields include Firmware Version (3.31D), Boot Record Version (1.31H), Serial Number (8009328), CPU Type (PPC750), Controller Name (empty), Cache Size (1024MB ECC SDRAM), Controller Unique ID (003CE3), and Append File ID (331D3 3510 S406F). There are checkboxes for "Controller Reset" and "Mute Beeper". A tabbed interface at the bottom shows "Channel" tabs: RS 232, Cache, Disk Array, Drive I/F, Host I/F, Redundancy, Peripheral, Network, and Protocol. The "RS 232" tab is active, displaying a table with the following data:

Port #	Max Baud Rate	Min Baud Rate	Default Baud Rate	Current baud Rate
0	38400	2400	38400	38400

Buttons at the bottom include "Change Settings...", "OK", "Cancel", and "Help".

2. Select the port desired, and click Change Settings.
The Change RS232 Port Settings window is displayed.
3. Select any baud rate desired, including the default setting of 38400, and then click OK to return to the previous window.

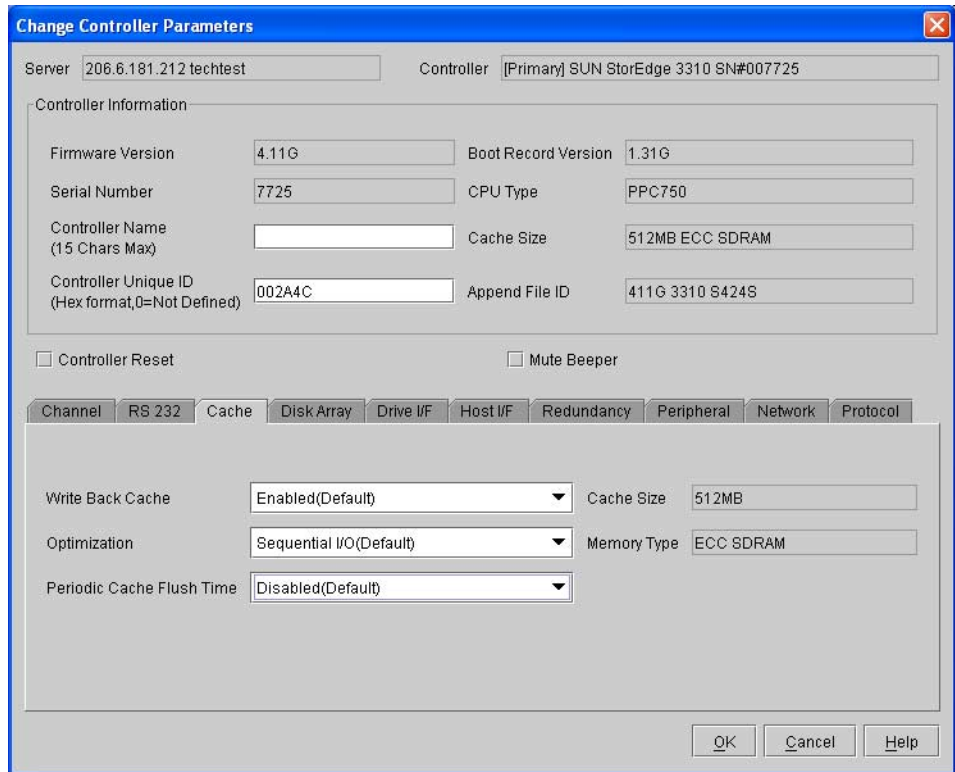


The screenshot shows the "Change RS232 Port Settings" window. It has three input fields: "RS232 Port No:" with value "0", "Current Baud Rate:" with value "38400", and "New Baud Rate:" with a dropdown menu showing "2400". There are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom.

4. Click OK.

Cache Tab

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Cache tab.



2. To specify write back as the default cache, click the Write Back Cache list box and select Enabled.

The write policy determines when cached data is written to the disk drives. The ability to hold data in cache while it is being written to disk can increase storage device speed during sequential reads. Write policy options include write-through and write-back.

Using write-back cache, the controller receives the data to write to disk, stores it in the memory buffer, and immediately sends the host OS a signal that the write operation is complete, before the data is actually written to the disk drive. Write-back caching improves the performance of write operations and the throughput of the controller card. Write-back cache is enabled by default.

Using write-through cache, the controller writes the data to the disk drive before signaling the host OS that the process is complete. Write-through cache has lower write operation and throughput performance than write-back cache, but it is the safer strategy, with minimum risk of data loss on power failure. Because a battery module is installed, power is supplied to the data cached in memory and the data can be written to disk when power is restored. When write-back cache is disabled, write-through cache becomes the default write policy.

The setting you specify is the default global cache setting for *all* logical drives. You can override this setting per logical drive when you create a logical drive.

3. Select an Optimization mode.

The Optimization mode indicates the amount of data that is written across each drive. The controller supports two optimization modes, sequential I/O and random I/O. Sequential I/O is the default mode.

The RAID array's cache optimization mode determines the cache block size used by the controller for all logical drives:

- For sequential optimization, the cache block size is 128 Kbyte.
- For random optimization, the cache block size is 32 Kbyte.

An appropriate cache block size improves performance when a particular application uses either large or small stripe sizes:

- Video playback, multimedia post-production audio and video editing, and similar applications read and write large files in sequential order.
- Transaction-based and database update applications read and write small files in random order.

Since the cache block size works in conjunction with the default stripe size set by the cache optimization mode for each logical drive you create, these default stripe sizes are consistent with the cache block size setting. You can, however, specify a different stripe size for any logical drive at the time you create it. See [“Specifying Non-Default Stripe Sizes” on page 187](#) for more information.

Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for more information on cache optimization modes.

Note – Once logical drives are created, you cannot use the RAID firmware's “Optimization for Random I/O” or “Optimization for Sequential I/O” menu option to change the optimization mode without deleting all logical drives. You can use Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, as described above, or the Sun StorEdge CLI `set cache-parameters` command to change the optimization mode while logical drives exist. Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family CLI User's Guide* for information on the `set cache-parameters` command.

Specifying Non-Default Stripe Sizes

Depending on the optimization mode and RAID level selected, newly created logical drives are configured with the default stripe sizes shown in [TABLE 8-3](#).

TABLE 8-3 Default Stripe Size Per Optimization Mode (Kbyte)

RAID Level	Sequential I/O	Random I/O
0, 1, 5	128	32
3	16	4

When you create a logical drive, you can replace the default stripe size with one that better suits your application.

- For sequential optimization, available stripe size choices include 16 Kbyte, 32 Kbyte, 64 Kbyte, 128 Kbyte, and 256 Kbyte.
- For random optimization, available stripe size choices include 4 Kbyte, 8 Kbyte, 16 Kbyte, 32 Kbyte, 64 Kbyte, 128 Kbyte, and 256 Kbyte.

Note – Default stripe sizes optimize performance for most applications.

Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for information about how to set the stripe size for a logical drive.

Once the stripe size is selected and data is written to logical drives, the only way to change the stripe size of an individual logical drive is to back up all its data to another location, delete the logical drive, and create a logical drive with the stripe size that you want.

Maximum Number of Disks and Maximum Usable Capacity for Random and Sequential Optimization

The maximum capacity per logical drive supported by the RAID firmware is:

- 16 Tbyte with Random Optimization
- 64 Tbyte with Sequential Optimization

Actual logical drive maximum capacities are usually determined by practical considerations or the amount of disk space available.



Caution – In FC and SATA configurations with large drive capacities, the size of the logical drive might exceed the device capacity limitation of your operating system. Be sure to check the device capacity limitation of your operating system before creating the logical drive. If the logical drive size exceeds the capacity limitation, you must partition the logical drive.

Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for details regarding maximum usable capacity of a logical drive, depending on RAID level and optimization mode.

4. Set Periodic Cache Flush Time.

Setting a Periodic Cache Flush Time enables the controller to flush cache to logical drive storage at specified intervals. This safety measure prevents the accumulation of data in cache that could be lost in the event of power loss.

Select one of the following values:

- Disabled – Terminates periodic cache flush, enabling the controller to flush cache when data in cache is written to disk.
- Continuous Sync – Continuously flushes data from cache to logical drive storage.
- 30 sec – Flushes cache to logical drive storage after each 30-second interval.
- 1 min – Flushes cache to logical drive storage after each one-minute interval.
- 2 min – Flushes cache to logical drive storage after each two-minute interval.
- 5 min – Flushes cache to logical drive storage after each five-minute interval.
- 10 min – Flushes cache to logical drive storage after each 10-minute interval.

Note – Setting this value to an interval less than one minute (Continuous Sync or 30 sec) might affect performance.

5. For changes to take effect, reset the controller.

Disk Array Tab

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Disk Array tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Change Controller Parameters' window for a SUN StorEdge 3510 controller. The 'Disk Array' tab is selected. The 'Write Verify' options are set to 'Disabled(Default)'. The 'Rebuild Priority' is set to 'Low(Default)'. The 'Write Verify On Normal' option has a note: 'This method affects "write" performance during normal use.'

2. Select either Disabled or Enabled from the three Write Verify list boxes.

Normally, errors might occur when a hard drive writes data. To avoid the write error, the controller can force the hard drives to verify the written data.

- Write Verify on Initialization – Performs verify-after-write while initializing the logical drive.
- Write Verify on Rebuild – Performs verify-after-write during the rebuilding process.
- Write Verify on Normal – Performs verify-after-write during normal I/O requests.

3. Select from the four options available in the Rebuild Priority list box: Low, Normal, Improved, or High.

The RAID controller provides a background rebuilding ability. This means the controller is able to serve other I/O requests while rebuilding the logical drives. The time required to rebuild a drive set largely depends on the total capacity of the logical drive being rebuilt. Additionally, the rebuilding process is totally transparent to the host computer or the OS.

- Low – The default that uses the controller’s minimum resources to rebuild.
- Normal – To speed up the rebuilding process.
- Improved – To allocate more resources to the rebuilding process.
- High – to use the controller’s maximum resources to complete the rebuilding process in the shortest time possible.

Drive I/F Tab

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Drive I/F tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Change Controller Parameters' window with the following details:

- Server:** 206.6.181.212 techtest
- Controller:** [Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328
- Controller Information:**
 - Firmware Version: 4.11D
 - Serial Number: 8009328
 - Controller Name (15 Chars Max): TECH FC
 - Controller Unique ID (Hex format, 0=Not Defined): 004DE2
 - Boot Record Version: 1.31H
 - CPU Type: PPC750
 - Cache Size: 1024MB ECC SDRAM
 - Append File ID: 411D 3510 S417F
- Options:**
 - Controller Reset
 - Mute Beeper
- Navigation Tabs:** Channel, RS 232, Cache, Disk Array, **Drive I/F**, Host I/F, Redundancy, Peripheral, Network, Protocol
- Drive I/F Tab Settings:**
 - Drive Motor Spin-Up: Disabled(Default)
 - Disk Access Latency(s): 15(Default)
 - Tag Count Per drive: 32(Default)
 - Auto Assign Global Spare Drive: Disabled(Default)
 - SAF-TE/SES Polling Period(s): 30.0
 - SCSI I/O Timeout(s): 30.0
 - Drive Check Period(s): 30.0
- Buttons:** OK, Cancel, Help

2. From the Drive Motor Spin Up field, select either Disabled or Enabled.

Drive Motor Spin Up determines how the physical drives in a disk array are started. When the power supply is unable to provide sufficient current for all physical drives and controllers that are powered up at the same time, spinning up the physical drives serially requires less current.

If Drive Motor Spin Up is enabled, the drives are powered up sequentially and some of these drives might not be ready for the controller to access when the array powers up. Increase the disk access delay time so that the controller will wait longer for the drive to be ready.

3. Set the Disk Access Latency.

This function sets the delay time before the controller tries to access the hard drives after power on. The default is 15 seconds.

4. Set the Tag Count Per drive.

This is the maximum number of tags that can be sent to each drive at the same time. A drive has a built-in cache that is used to sort all of the I/O requests (tags) that are sent to the drive, enabling the drive to finish the requests faster.

The cache size and maximum number of tags varies between different brands and models of drive. Use the default setting of 32. Changing the maximum tag count to Disable causes the internal cache of the drive to be ignored (not used).

The controller supports tag command queuing with an adjustable tag count from 1 to 128.

5. Select the variable time options shown in the list box from the SAF-TE/SES Polling Period(s) field, or select Disabled to disable this function so that all installed Event Recording Modules (ERMs) are never polled.

If there are remote devices in your RAID enclosure monitored by SAF-TE or SES, use this function to determine the interval after which the controller checks the status of those devices.

6. From the SCSI I/O Timeout(s) field, select from 0.5 through 30 seconds.

The SCSI I/O Timeout is the time interval for the controller to wait for a drive to respond. If the controller attempts to read data from or write data to a drive but the drive does not respond within the SCSI I/O timeout value, the drive is considered a failed drive. The default setting for SCSI I/O Timeout is 30 seconds.



Caution – Do not change this setting. Setting the timeout to a lower value causes the controller to judge a drive as failed while a drive is still retrying or while a drive is unable to arbitrate the SCSI bus. Setting the timeout to a greater value causes the controller to keep waiting for a drive, and it might sometimes cause a host timeout.

When the drive detects a media error while reading from the drive platter, it retries the previous reading or recalibrates the head. When the drive encounters a bad block on the media, it reassigns the bad block to another spare block on the same disk drive. However, all of this takes time. The time to perform these operations can vary between different brands and models of drives.

During SCSI bus arbitration, a device with higher priority can use the bus first. A device with lower priority sometimes receives a SCSI I/O Timeout when devices of higher priority keep using the bus.

7. From the Drive Check Period(s) field, select from 0.5 through 30 seconds.

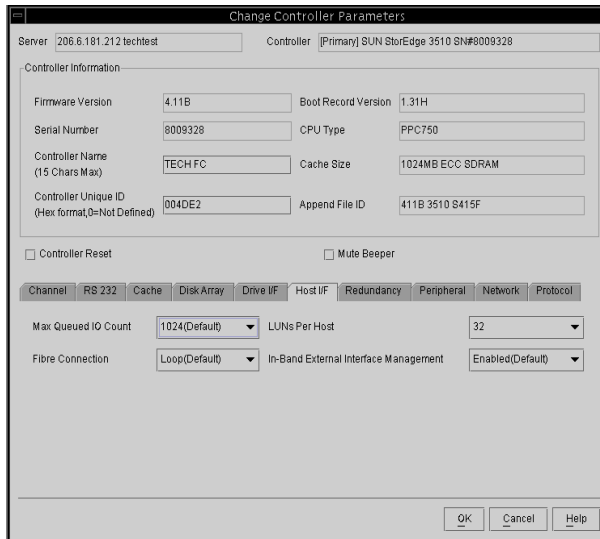
The Periodic Drive Check Time is an interval for the controller to check the drives on the SCSI bus. The default value is Disabled, which means if there is no activity on the bus, the controller does not know if a drive has failed or has been removed. Setting an interval enables the program to detect a drive failure when there is no array activity; however, performance is degraded.

8. Auto Assign Global Spare Drive.

This feature is disabled by default. When you enable it, the system automatically assigns a global spare to the minimum drive ID in unused drives. This enables the array to rebuild automatically without user intervention when a drive is replaced.

Host I/F Tab

9. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Host I/F tab.



10. Set the Max Queued IO Count.

This function enables you to configure the maximum number of I/O operations per logical drive that can be accepted from servers. The predefined range is from 1 to 1024 I/O operations per logical drive, or you can choose the “Auto Compute” (automatically configured) setting. The default value is 1024 I/O operations per logical drive.

The appropriate setting depends on how many I/O operations the attached servers and the controller itself are performing. This can vary according to the amount of host memory present, the number of drives and their size, and buffer limitations. If you increase the amount of host memory, add more drives, or replace drives with larger drives, you might want to increase the maximum I/O count. But optimum performance usually results from using the “Auto Compute” or “256” settings.

11. (FC and SATA only). Select the type of Fibre Connection.

Sun StorEdge 3510 FC arrays and Sun StorEdge 3511 SATA arrays support the following Fibre connection protocols:

- **Point-to-Point** – Can be used only with a switched fabric network, also called a Storage Attached Network (SAN) configuration. Point-to-Point protocol supports full duplex communication, but only allows one ID per channel.
- **Loop (FC-AL)** – Can be used with Direct Attached Storage (DAS) or SAN configurations. FC-AL supports only half-duplex communication, but allows up to eight IDs per channel.

Refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for more information about point-to-point and loop protocols.

12. Set the LUNs Per Host.

This function is used to change the maximum number of LUNs you can configure per host ID. Each time a host channel ID is added, it uses the number of LUNs allocated in this setting. The default setting is 32 LUNs, with a predefined range of 1 to 32 LUNs available.

Note – For the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array and the Sun StorEdge 3320 SCSI array, the maximum number of LUN assignments is 128; therefore, if you use the default setting of 32, you can only add four host channel IDs ($4 \times 32 = 128$). If you added more than four host channel IDs (see “[Channel Tab](#)” on page 182), the LUNs Per Host parameter must be set to a value less than 32.

13. (Optional) To increase the security of the data stored on the array, you can prevent in-band management through a SCSI or FC interface by selecting Disable for In-Band External Interface Management.



Caution – If you are managing the array through in-band, when you select Disable for In-Band External Interface Management, communication with the array is disabled. If you want to continue monitoring this array, select this option only when you are managing the array through out-of-band. For the steps to switch to out-of-band management, see [“To Use Out-of-Band Management” on page 119](#).

After selecting Disable for In-Band External Interface Management, select the server icon and choose View → View Server → Probe. It takes several minutes for the console to update.

14. If you made changes to the Fibre Connection protocol, for changes to take effect, reset the controller.

Redundancy Tab

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Redundancy tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Change Controller Parameters' window. At the top, there are fields for 'Server' (206.6.181.212 techtest) and 'Controller' ([Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328). Below this is a 'Controller Information' section with fields for Firmware Version (3.31D), Boot Record Version (1.31H), Serial Number (8009328), CPU Type (PPC750), Controller Name (15 Chars Max), Cache Size (1024MB ECC SDRAM), Controller Unique ID (Hex format, 0=Not Defined) (003CE3), and Append File ID (331D3 3510 S406F). There are checkboxes for 'Controller Reset' and 'Mute Beeper'. At the bottom, there is a tabbed interface with tabs for Channel, RS 232, Cache, Disk Array, Drive I/F, Host I/F, Redundancy (selected), Peripheral, Network, and Protocol. The Redundancy tab shows 'Controller Configuration' (Redundant Primary), 'Controller Status' (Redundant Enabled), 'Secondary Serial No' (8009200), 'Set Controller Config' (No Change), 'Write-Through Cache Synchronization' (Synchronization), and 'Primary Controller Position' (Lower). The 'Synchronization' dropdown menu is open, showing 'Synchronization' and 'Not Synchronized' options. At the bottom right, there are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

2. **Select an option from the Set Controller Config field.**

- Redundant Deassert Reset – If you have failed a controller and want to bring it back online.
- Redundant Force Sec Fail – If you want to force the secondary controller to fail.
- Redundant Force Pri Fail – If you want to force the primary controller to fail.

Note – Set both controllers in the Redundant Primary configuration. The controllers then determine which one is primary and which one is secondary. This prevents any possible conflicts between controllers.

3. **When an array with redundant controllers is operating with write-back cache enabled, you can disable the synchronization of cache between the two controllers by selecting Not Synchronized from the Write-Through Cache Synchronization list box.**



Caution – Disabling cache synchronization and eliminating the mirroring and transferring of data between controllers can improve array performance, but it also eliminates the safeguard provided by cache synchronization if one of the controllers fails.

4. **For changes to take effect, reset the controller.**

5. **Click OK to return to the main menu.**

Peripheral Tab

The Peripheral tab enables you to configure the array to dynamically switch write policy from write-back cache to write-through cache when a specified event occurs or threshold is exceeded. Once the problem is corrected, the original write policy is restored. You can also configure the controller to shut down if it exceeds the temperature threshold.

The Peripheral Device Status box enables you to view the status of all environmental sensors for the controller. (For environmental status of the chassis, see [“View Enclosure” on page 95.](#))

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Peripheral tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Change Controller Parameters' window with the 'Peripheral' tab selected. The window title is 'Change Controller Parameters'. At the top, there are fields for 'Server' (206.6.181.212 techtest) and 'Controller' ([Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328). Below this is the 'Controller Information' section with fields for Firmware Version (3.31D), Boot Record Version (1.31H), Serial Number (8009328), CPU Type (PPC750), Controller Name (15 Chars Max), Cache Size (1024MB ECC SDRAM), Controller Unique ID (Hex format, 0=Not Defined) (003CE3), and Append File ID (331D3 3510 S406F). There are checkboxes for 'Controller Reset' and 'Mute Beeper'. Below the checkboxes are tabs for 'Channel', 'RS 232', 'Cache', 'Disk Array', 'Drive I/F', 'Host I/F', 'Redundancy', 'Peripheral', 'Network', and 'Protocol'. The 'Peripheral' tab is active, showing settings for 'Controller Failure' (Enable), 'Fan Failure' (Enable), 'Power Supply Failure' (Enable), 'Battery-Backup Unit Failure or Not Fully Charged' (Enable), 'Temperature Exceeds Threshold' (Enable), and 'Temperature Exceeds Threshold Period' (30 min). At the bottom, there is a 'Peripheral Device Status' table with columns for 'device name', 'value info', and 'status'. The table contains one row: 'CPU Temp Sensor' with '5873.00C' and 'Over upper threshold'. At the bottom right are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

device name	value info	status
CPU Temp Sensor	5873.00C	Over upper threshold

2. Enable or disable event trigger operations.

If the array is configured with write-back cache enabled, specify whether you want the write policy to dynamically switch from write-back cache to write-through cache when the following events occur:

- Controller Failure
- Fan Failure
- Power Supply Failure
- Battery-Backup Unit failure or Battery Not Fully Charged

Note – Once the problem is corrected, the original write policy is restored.

If you do not want the write policy to be switched dynamically, set these options to Disable. They are enabled by default.

For more information about write-back and write-through, see [“To Add a Logical Drive or Logical Volume From New Logical Drives”](#) on page 150.

3. Enable or disable over-temperature controller shutdown.

If you want the controller to shut down *immediately* if the temperature exceeds the threshold limit, select Enable in the Temperature Exceeds Threshold field; otherwise, select Disable.

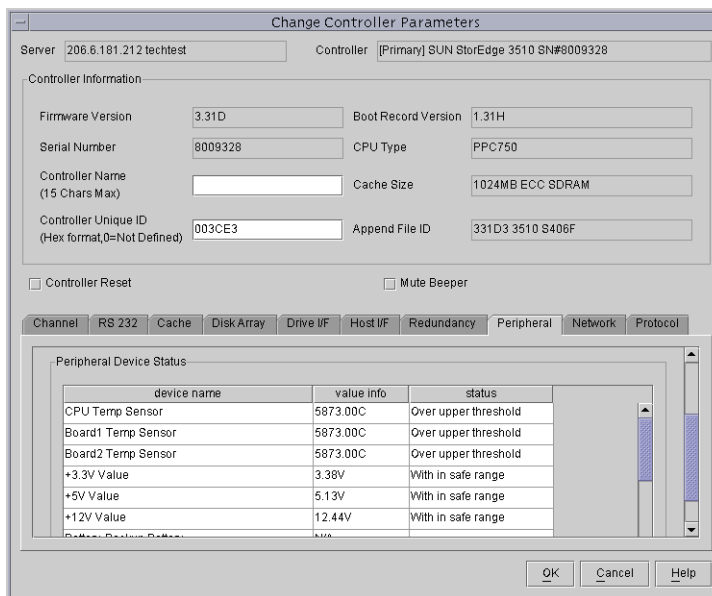
When the controller shuts down, the controller icon in the main window displays a yellow (degraded) device status symbol .

4. If you want the controller to shut down after the temperature exceeds the threshold limit but not before a specified interval, select a time from the Temperature Exceeds Threshold Period field:


- 0 sec
- 2 min
- 5 min
- 10 min
- 20 min
- 30 min (Default)

▼ To View Environmental Status for the Controller

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Peripheral tab.
2. Click the right scroll bar and scroll down until the Peripheral Device Status box is displayed.



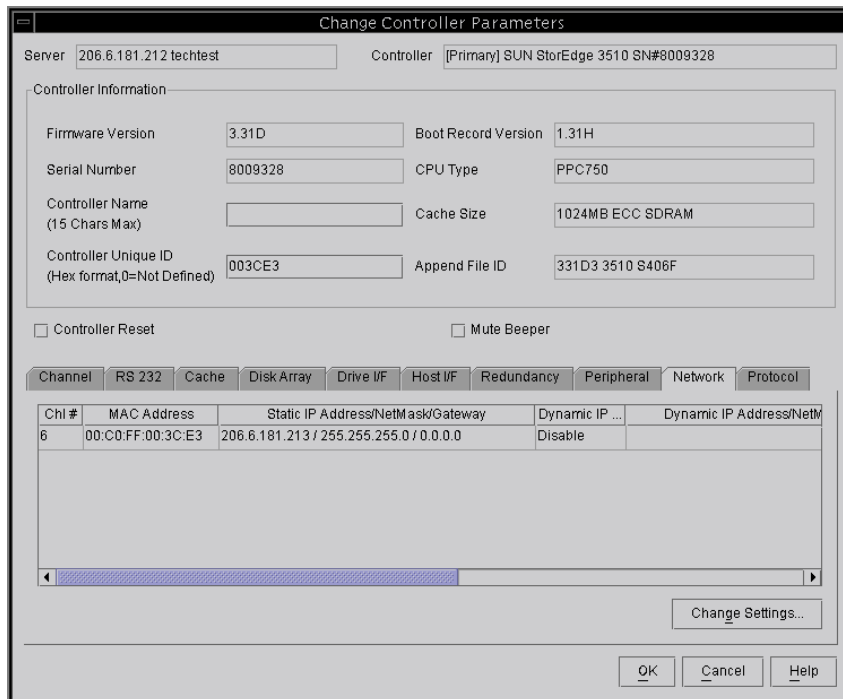
3. In the Peripheral Device Status box, click the scroll bar and scroll down to view environmental status information.

The threshold ranges for peripheral devices are set using the firmware application. If a device exceeds the threshold range that was set, its status displays “Over upper threshold.” If a device does not meet the threshold range, its status displays “Under lower threshold.” Both events cause the controller icon in the main window to display a red (critical) device status symbol .

For information on how to set the threshold ranges, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide*.

Network Tab

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Network tab.



The screenshot shows the 'Change Controller Parameters' window with the 'Network' tab selected. The window title is 'Change Controller Parameters'. At the top, there are fields for 'Server' (206.6.181.212 techtest) and 'Controller' ([Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328). Below this is the 'Controller Information' section with fields for Firmware Version (3.31D), Boot Record Version (1.31H), Serial Number (8009328), CPU Type (PPC750), Controller Name (15 Chars Max), Cache Size (1024MB ECC SDRAM), Controller Unique ID (Hex format, 0=Not Defined) (003CE3), and Append File ID (331D3 3510 S406F). There are checkboxes for 'Controller Reset' and 'Mute Beeper'. Below the checkboxes are tabs for 'Channel', 'RS 232', 'Cache', 'Disk Array', 'Drive I/F', 'Host I/F', 'Redundancy', 'Peripheral', 'Network', and 'Protocol'. The 'Network' tab is active, showing a table with columns: 'Chl #', 'MAC Address', 'Static IP Address/NetMask/Gateway', 'Dynamic IP ...', and 'Dynamic IP Address/NetM'. The table contains one row with values: '6', '00:C0:FF:00:3C:E3', '206.6.181.213 / 255.255.255.0 / 0.0.0.0', 'Disable', and an empty field. At the bottom right of the window are buttons for 'Change Settings...', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

Chl #	MAC Address	Static IP Address/NetMask/Gateway	Dynamic IP ...	Dynamic IP Address/NetM
6	00:C0:FF:00:3C:E3	206.6.181.213 / 255.255.255.0 / 0.0.0.0	Disable	

1. To manually configure an IP address, subnet mask, or gateway address, click **Change Settings**.

The Change Network Setting window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Change Network Settings' dialog box. It is divided into several sections:

- Physical Channel No:** 6
- Current Transfer Speed:** 100M
- Static IP Information:** IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Gateway fields are empty.
- Dynamic IP Information:** IP Address: 206.235.238.163, Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0, Gateway: 206.235.238.1. The checkbox 'Enable Dynamic IP Assignment' is checked.
- MAC Address Information:** MAC Address: 00:00:FF:00:10:8F. The checkbox 'MAC Address Configurable' is unchecked.
- Transfer Speed Information:** The checkbox 'Transfer Speed Configurable' is unchecked. Under 'Transfer Speeds To Negotiate', the checkboxes for 10M, 100M, and 1G are all checked.
- Dynamic IP Assignment Mechanism List:** A table with two columns: 'Supported' and 'Selected'.

Supported	Selected
RARP	DHCP

Buttons 'Add' and 'Remove' are located between the two columns.

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Note – Sun StorEdge 3000 Family arrays are configured by default with the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) TCP/IP network support protocol enabled. If your network uses a DHCP server, the server assigns an IP address, netmask, and gateway IP address to the RAID array when the array is initialized or subsequently reset.

2. If you have set up an array in an environment with a RARP server:
 - a. Remove DHCP from the Selected box in the Dynamic IP Assignment Mechanism List.
 - b. Add RARP to the Selected box in the Dynamic IP Assignment Mechanism List.

Note – The firmware does not support multiple IP assignment mechanisms. If a protocol is currently selected, you must remove it before adding another protocol.

3. If you prefer to have a static IP address:
 - a. Deselect the Enable Dynamic IP Assignment check box.
 - b. Type the static IP address, the subnet mask, and the gateway IP address into the appropriate boxes under Static IP Information.
4. Click OK.
5. When prompted to reset the controller, click Yes.

Protocol Tab

For security reasons, you can enable only the network protocols you want to support, which limits the ways in which security can be breached.

1. From the Change Controller Parameters window, select the Protocol tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Change Controller Parameters' window with the 'Protocol' tab selected. The window title is 'Change Controller Parameters'. At the top, there are fields for 'Server' (206.6.181.212 techtest) and 'Controller' ([Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328). Below this is the 'Controller Information' section with fields for Firmware Version (4.11A), Boot Record Version (1.31H), Serial Number (8009328), CPU Type (PPC750), Controller Name (15 Chars Max), Cache Size (1024MB ECC SDRAM), Controller Unique ID (Hex format, 0=Not Defined) (003CE3), and Append File ID (411A01 3510 S410F). There are checkboxes for 'Controller Reset' and 'Mute Beeper'. Below this is a tabbed interface with tabs for Channel, RS 232, Cache, Disk Array, Drive I/F, Host I/F, Redundancy, Peripheral, Network, and Protocol. The 'Protocol' tab is active, showing a table of network protocols.

Protocol	Enabled	Port	Inactivity Timeout Period
TELNET	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	23	45 min
HTTP	<input type="checkbox"/>	80	N/A
HTTPS	<input type="checkbox"/>	443	N/A
FTP	<input type="checkbox"/>	21	N/A
SSH	<input type="checkbox"/>	22	N/A
PriAgentAll	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	47409	N/A
SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	161	N/A
DHCP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	68	N/A

At the bottom of the window are buttons for 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

2. Select which protocols to enable or disable.

The protocols are enabled or disabled by default as follows:

- TELNET – Telnet access to the IP address is enabled.
- HTTP – Hypertext Transport Protocol access is disabled.
- HTTPS – Hypertext Transport Protocol Secure access is disabled.
- FTP – File Transfer Protocol access is disabled.
- SSH – Secure Socket Handling protocol access is disabled.
- PriAgentAll – The internal communication protocol used by the controller is enabled.

Note – The PriAgentAll protocol must remain enabled for Sun StorEdge Configuration Service and the CLI to receive information from the controller firmware. Do not disable this protocol.

- SNMP – Simple Network Management Protocol access is disabled. SNMP might be used to communicate with external management software.
- DHCP – The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol access is enabled. DHCP is used in some networks to dynamically assign IP addresses to systems on the network.
- Ping – Ping enables hosts in the network to determine if an array is online.

▼ To Mute the Controller Beeper

When an event occurs that causes the controller to beep, for example, when a logical drive fails, during a rebuild, or when adding a physical drive, you can mute the beeper in one of two ways.

1. **Select the desired controller icon in the main window.**
2. **Choose Array Administration → Controller Maintenance.**
3. **If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig`, a password prompt is displayed; type the `ssconfig` password.**

The Controller Maintenance Options window is displayed.

4. **Click Mute Controller Beeper.**

or

1. **Select the desired controller icon in the main window.**
2. **Choose Configuration → Custom Configure.**

3. **Select Change Controller Parameters.**
4. **Select Mute Beeper.**

Note – If the alarm is caused by a failed component, muting the beeper has no effect. You need to push the Reset button on the right ear of the array. See [“View Enclosure” on page 95](#) for more information about component failure alarms.

▼ To Assign or Change Standby Drives

A standby drive acts as a spare to support automatic data rebuilding after a physical drive in a fault-tolerant (non-RAID 0) logical drive fails. For a standby drive to take the place of another drive, it must be at least equal in size to the failed drive and all of the logical drives dependent on the failed disk must be redundant (RAID 1, 3, 5, or 1+0).

With this function you can either assign a global or local standby drive or change a ready drive’s state to standby or a standby drive’s state to ready. A drive that is assigned as a global spare rebuilds if a member of any existing drive fails. You can have one or more standby drives associated with an array controller. Global spares are used in the order in which they are created. A local spare has to be assigned to a particular logical drive and only rebuilds for a member within that logical drive.

1. **In the main window, select the desired array controller.**
2. **Choose Configuration → Custom Configure or click the Custom Configuration tool.**

If necessary, log into the configuration level of the program with the `ssconfig` password. The Custom Configuration Options window is displayed.

3. **Select Make or Change Standby Drives from the Custom Configuration Options window.**

The Make or Change Standby Drives window is displayed.

Ch.Id	Manufacturer	Model	Status
2.9	SEAGATE	ST336752FSUN36G	LOCAL STANDBY(LD#0)

- 4. Check the server and the controller IDs at the top of the window.**

If you want to select a different server or controller, click Cancel to return to the main window, select the correct server, or controller from the tree view, and repeat Steps 2 and 3.
- 5. Select a drive to be assigned or changed.**
- 6. Change or assign the drive's state by selecting Ready, Global StandBy, or StandBy for LD# (local).**
- 7. Click Modify.**
- 8. Click Apply, and then click Close.**
- 9. Whenever you make changes to the configuration, save the new configuration to a file. For details, see ["Configuration File" on page 62](#).**

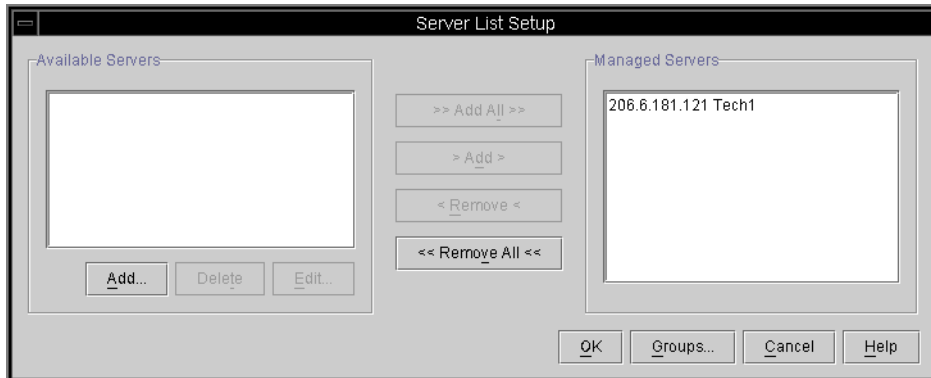
Available Servers

Occasionally, you might need to edit or delete an entry from the Available or Managed Servers lists in the Server List Setup window.

▼ To Edit a Server Entry

1. Choose **File** → **Server List Setup**. The **Server Setup** window is displayed.

If necessary, move the server name from the Managed Servers list to the Available Servers list in the Server List Setup window. Note that only the server entries in the Available Servers list can be edited.



2. Select the name of the server in the Available Servers list, and click Edit.
The Edit Server window is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Server' dialog box. At the top, the title bar reads 'Edit Server'. Below the title bar is a text input field for 'Server name' containing the text 'techtest'. Underneath are three tabs: 'Properties', 'Mailing Lists', and 'Grouping'. The 'Properties' tab is selected and contains a 'Network Information' section. This section has two text input fields: 'IP Address' with the value '206.6.181.212' and 'Socket Port' with the value '1270'. To the right of these fields is a button labeled 'Get IP Addr by Name'. Below the network information is a 'Monitoring Login' section. It features a text input field for 'ssmon Password' filled with asterisks, and two radio buttons for 'Auto discovery', with 'Yes' selected. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help'.

3. Make the necessary changes. Click OK to register your changes.

For descriptions of the fields in this window, see [“To Add Servers” on page 12](#). The Add Server and Edit Server windows contain the same fields.

IP Address Shortcut: If the network address has changed, click Get IP Addr by Name. The program searches for and displays the correct IP address if you typed the name of the server as it is recorded by the name service used by the network.

If the name used for the server is not the same as the server’s network name or if the naming service is not yet updated, delete the server and add it again.

4. Move the server name back to the Managed Servers list.
5. Click OK to exit the Edit Server window.

Updating the Object Data Manager on an IBM AIX Host

For an IBM AIX host, to ensure that the environment is stable and accurate after making configuration changes, you need to update the Object Data Manager (ODM).

▼ To Update the ODM

1. Run the following command for each deleted disk:

```
# rmdev -l hdisk# -d
```

where # is the number of the disk that was removed.



Caution – Never remove hdisk0.

To remove multiple disks (hdisk1 up to hdisk19), run the following commands:

```
# /usr/bin/ksh93
# for ((i=1; i<20; i++))
> do
> rmdev -l hdisk$i -d
> done
```

If the `rmdev` command returns disk busy errors, use either the command line, `smit`, or `smitty` to make sure that any previously created volume groups have been varied off and that no file systems are mounted on the device(s). It might also be necessary to perform an `exportvg` function on persistent volume groups. If `exportvg` does not work, try rebooting.

2. If using a JBOD, run the same command for generic devices, which can be determined from the results returned from running the following command:

```
# lsdev -Cc generic
```

3. Run the following commands:

```
# /usr/bin/ksh93
# for ((i=1; i<20; i++))
> do
> rmdev -l gsc$i -d
> done
```

4. Delete references in the `/dev` directory by running the command:

```
# rm /dev/gsc*
```

5. Stop and start the agent and reread the system configuration into the ODM by running the following commands:

```
# ssagent stop
# ssagent start
# cfgmgr -v
```



Caution – Depending on the number of devices present in the OS, this command might take several minutes to complete. Do not make any configuration changes until `cfgmgr` has completed.

RAID Basics

This appendix provides background information about RAID including an overview of RAID terminology and RAID levels. Topics covered include the following:

- [“RAID Terminology Overview” on page 209](#)
- [“RAID Levels” on page 214](#)
- [“Local and Global Spare Drives” on page 220](#)

RAID Terminology Overview

Redundant array of independent disks (RAID) is a storage technology used to improve the processing capability of storage systems. This technology is designed to provide reliability in disk array systems and to take advantage of the performance gains offered by an array of multiple disks over single-disk storage.

RAID’s two primary underlying concepts are:

- distributing data over multiple hard drives improves performance
- using multiple drives properly allows for any one drive to fail without loss of data and without system downtime

In the event of a disk failure, disk access continues normally and the failure is transparent to the host system.

Logical Drive

A logical drive is an array of independent physical drives. Increased availability, capacity, and performance are achieved by creating logical drives. The logical drive appears to the host the same as a local hard disk drive does.

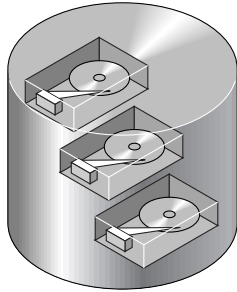


FIGURE A-1 Logical Drive Including Multiple Physical Drives

Logical Volume

A logical volume is composed of two or more logical drives. The logical volume can be divided into a maximum of 32 partitions for Fibre Channel. During operation, the host sees a nonpartitioned logical volume or a partition of a logical volume as one single physical drive.

Local Spare Drive

A local spare drive is a standby drive assigned to serve one specified logical drive. When a member drive of this specified logical drive fails, the local spare drive becomes a member drive and automatically starts to rebuild.

Global Spare Drive

A global spare drive does not only serve one specified logical drive. When a member drive from any of the logical drives fails, the global spare drive joins that logical drive and automatically starts to rebuild.

Channels

You can connect up to 15 devices (excluding the controller itself) to a SCSI channel when the Wide function is enabled (16-bit SCSI). You can connect up to 125 devices to an FC channel in loop mode. Each device has a unique ID that identifies the device on the SCSI bus or FC loop.

A logical drive consists of a group of SCSI drives, Fibre Channel drives, or SATA drives. Physical drives in one logical drive do not have to come from the same SCSI channel. Also, each logical drive can be configured for a different RAID level.

A drive can be assigned as the local spare drive to one specified logical drive, or as a global spare drive. A spare is not available for logical drives that have no data redundancy (RAID 0).

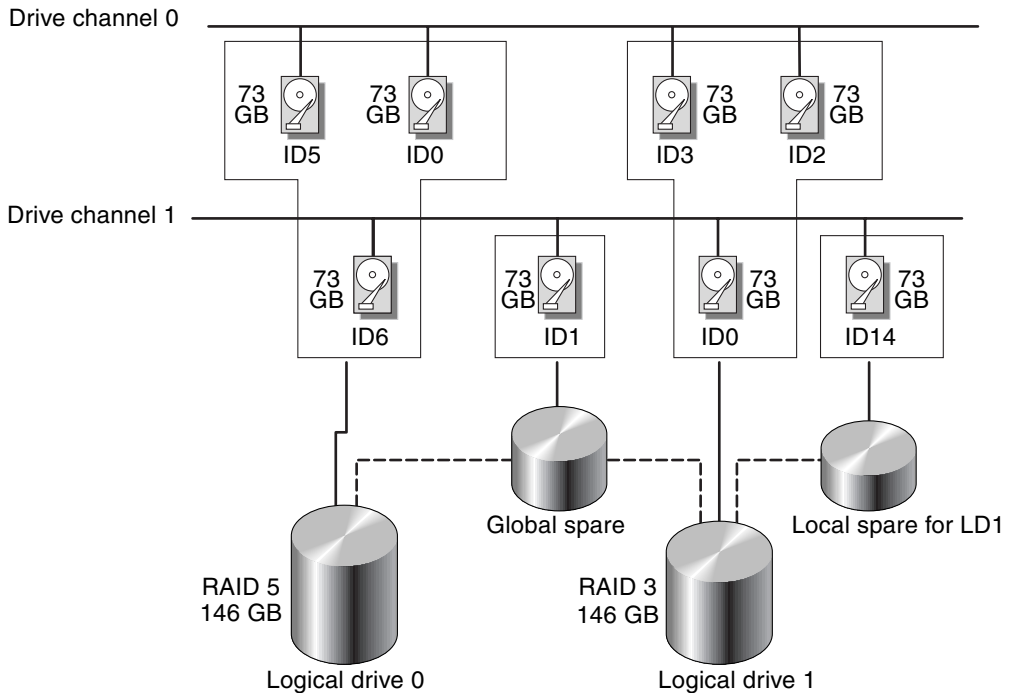


FIGURE A-2 Allocation of Drives in Logical Drive Configurations

You can divide a logical drive or logical volume into several partitions or use the entire logical drive as single partition.

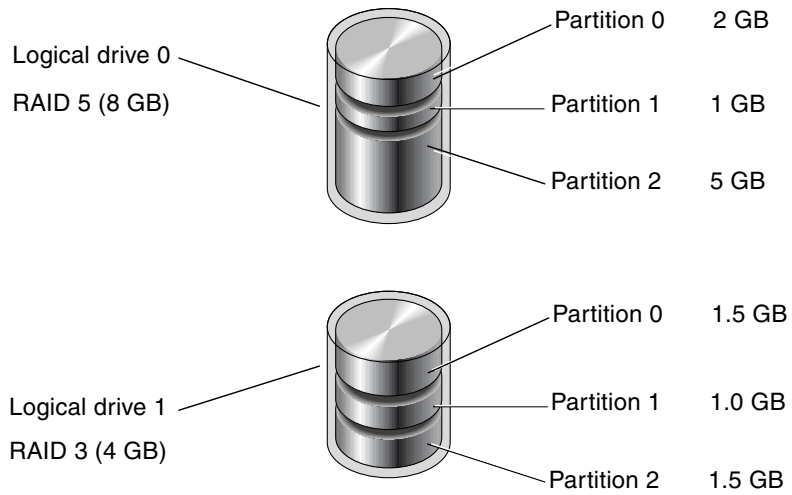


FIGURE A-3 Partitions in Logical Drive Configurations

Each partition is mapped to LUNs under host SCSI IDs or IDs on host channels. Each SCSI ID/LUN acts as one individual hard drive to the host computer.

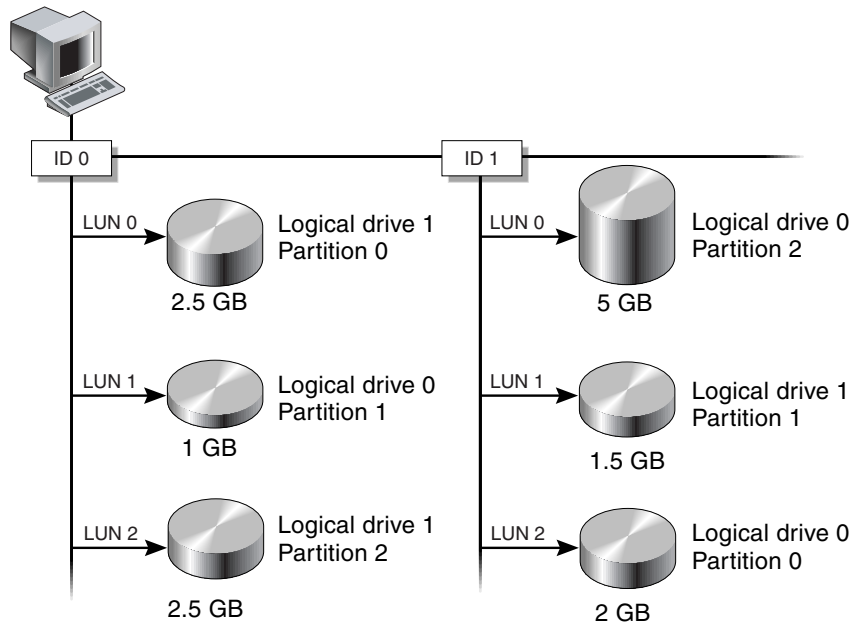


FIGURE A-4 Mapping Partitions to Host ID/LUNs

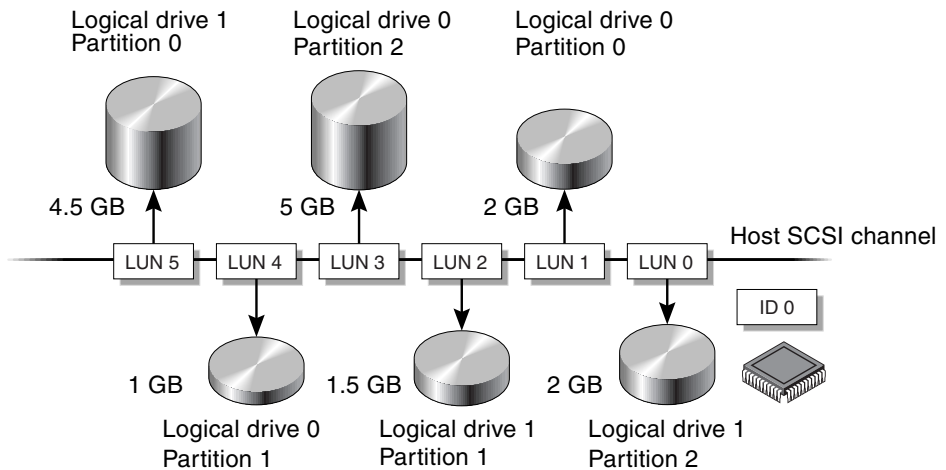


FIGURE A-5 Mapping Partitions to LUNs Under an ID

RAID Levels

There are several ways to implement a RAID array, using a combination of mirroring, striping, duplexing, and parity technologies. These various techniques are referred to as RAID levels. Each level offers a mix of performance, reliability, and cost. Each level uses a distinct algorithm to implement fault tolerance.

There are several RAID level choices: RAID 0, 1, 3, 5, 1+0, 3+0 (30), and 5+0 (50). RAID levels 1, 3, and 5 are the most commonly used.

The following table provides a brief overview of the RAID levels.

TABLE A-1 RAID Level Overview

RAID Level	Description	Number of Drives Supported	Capacity	Redundancy
0	Striping	2–36	N	No
1	Mirroring	2	N/2	Yes
1+0	Mirroring and striping	4–36 (even number only)	N/2	Yes
3	Striping with dedicated parity	3–31	N-1	Yes
5	Striping with distributed parity	3–31	N-1	Yes
3+0 (30)	Striping of RAID 3 logical drives	2–8 logical drives	N-# of logical drives	Yes
5+0 (50)	Striping of RAID 5 logical drives	2–8 logical drives	N-# of logical drives	Yes

Capacity refers to the total number (N) of physical drives available for data storage. For example, if the capacity is N-1 and the total number of disk drives in the logical drive is six 36-Mbyte drives, the disk space available for storage is equal to five disk drives—(5 x 36 Mbyte or 180 Mbyte). The -1 refers to the amount of striping across six drives, which provides redundancy of data and is equal to the size of one of the disk drives.

For RAID 3+0 (30) and 5+0 (50), *capacity* refers to the total number of physical drives (N) minus one physical drive (#) for each logical drive in the volume. For example, if the total number of disk drives in the logical drive is twenty 36-Mbyte drives and the total number of logical drives is 2, the disk space available for storage is equal to 18 disk drives—18 x 36 Mbyte (648 Mbyte).

RAID 0

RAID 0 implements *block striping*, where data is broken into logical blocks and is striped across several drives. Unlike other RAID levels, there is no facility for redundancy. In the event of a disk failure, data is lost.

In block striping, the total disk capacity is equivalent to the sum of the capacities of all drives in the array. This combination of drives appears to the system as a single logical drive.

RAID 0 provides the highest performance. It is fast because data can be simultaneously transferred to or from every disk in the array. Furthermore, read/writes to separate drives can be processed concurrently.

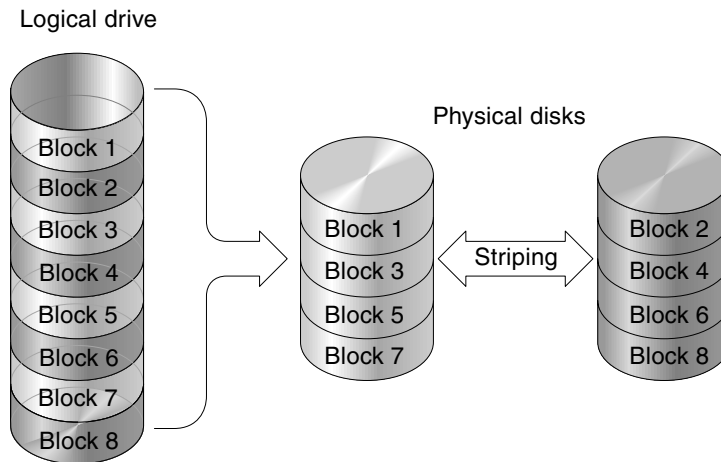


FIGURE A-6 RAID 0 Configuration

RAID 1

RAID 1 implements *disk mirroring*, where a copy of the same data is recorded onto two drives. By keeping two copies of data on separate disks, data is protected against a disk failure. If, at any time, a disk in the RAID 1 array fails, the remaining good disk (copy) can provide all of the data needed, thus preventing downtime.

In disk mirroring, the total usable capacity is equivalent to the capacity of one drive in the RAID 1 array. Thus, combining two 1-Gbyte drives, for example, creates a single logical drive with a total usable capacity of 1 Gbyte. This combination of drives appears to the system as a single logical drive.

Note – RAID 1 does not allow expansion. RAID levels 3 and 5 permit expansion by adding drives to an existing array.

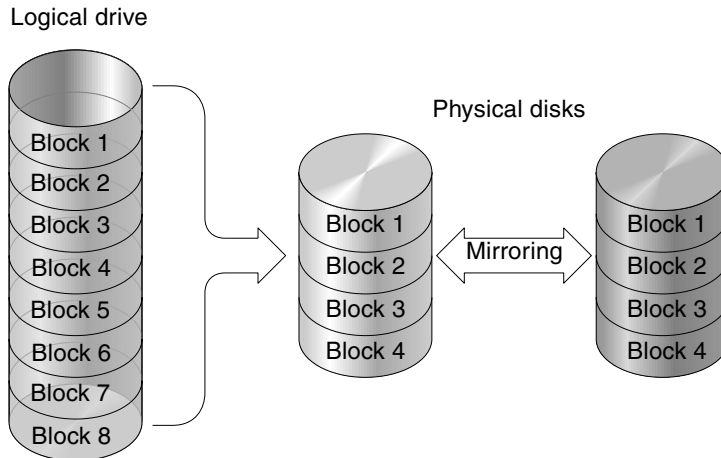


FIGURE A-7 RAID 1 Configuration

In addition to the data protection that RAID 1 provides, this RAID level also improves performance. In cases where multiple concurrent I/O is occurring, that I/O can be distributed between disk copies, thus reducing total effective data access time.

RAID 1+0

RAID 1+0 combines RAID 0 and RAID 1 to offer *mirroring and disk striping*. Using RAID 1+0 is a time-saving feature that enables you to configure a large number of disks for mirroring in one step. It is not a standard RAID level option that you can select; it does not appear in the list of RAID level options supported by the controller. If four or more disk drives are chosen for a RAID 1 logical drive, RAID 1+0 is performed automatically.

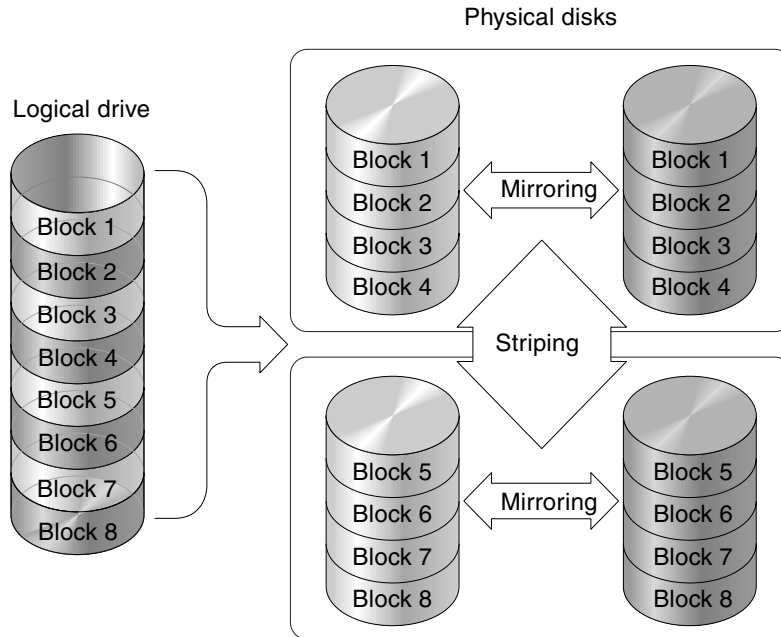


FIGURE A-8 RAID 1+0 Configuration

RAID 3

RAID 3 implements *block striping with dedicated parity*. This RAID level breaks data into logical blocks, the size of a disk block, and then stripes these blocks across several drives. One drive is dedicated to parity. In the event that a disk fails, the original data can be reconstructed using the parity information and the information on the remaining disks.

In RAID 3, the total disk capacity is equivalent to the sum of the capacities of all drives in the combination, excluding the parity drive. Thus, combining four 1-Gbyte drives, for example, creates a single logical drive with a total usable capacity of 3 Gbyte. This combination appears to the system as a single logical drive.

RAID 3 provides increased data transfer rates when data is being read in small chunks or sequentially. However, in write operations that do not span every drive, performance is reduced because the information stored in the parity drive needs to be recalculated and rewritten every time new data is written, limiting simultaneous I/O.

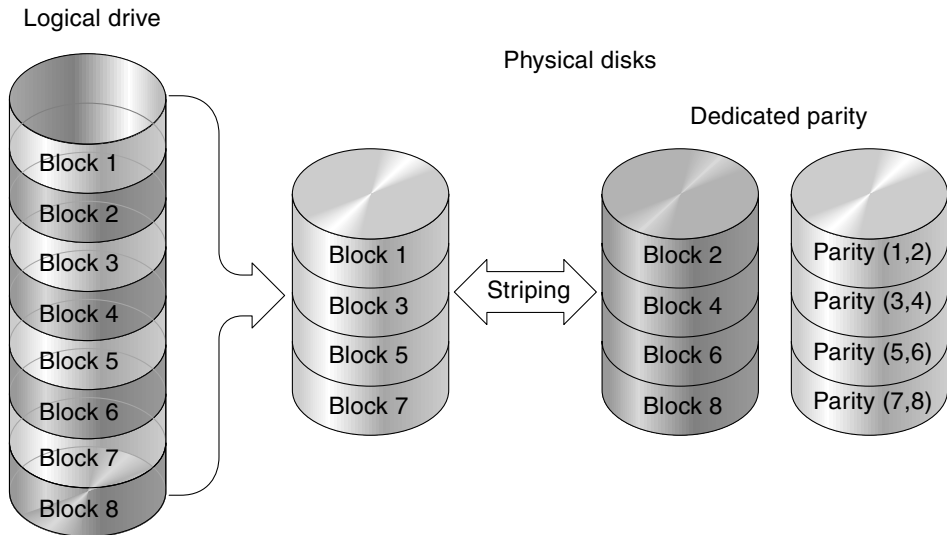


FIGURE A-9 RAID 3 Configuration

RAID 5

RAID 5 implements *multiple-block striping with distributed parity*. This RAID level offers redundancy with the parity information distributed across all disks in the array. Data and its parity are never stored on the same disk. In the event that a disk fails, original data can be reconstructed using the parity information and the information on the remaining disks.

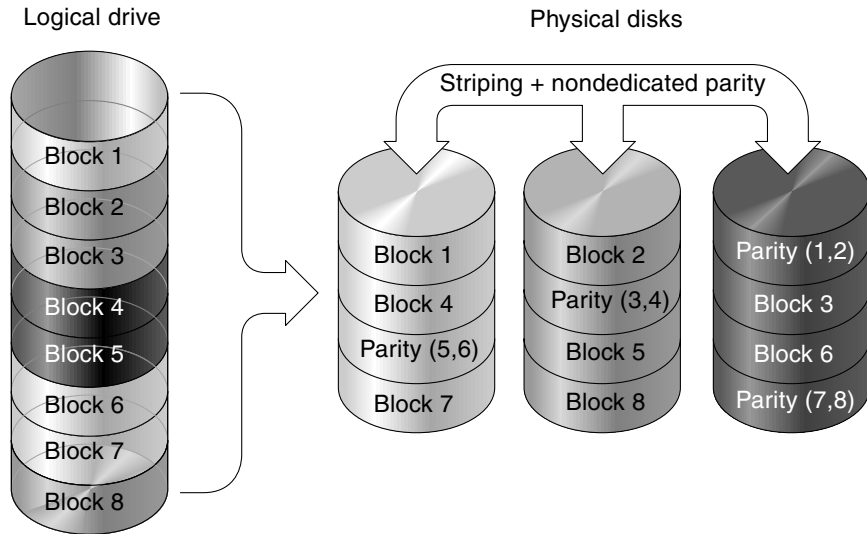


FIGURE A-10 RAID 5 Configuration

RAID 5 offers increased data transfer rates when data is accessed in large chunks, or randomly and reduced data access time during many simultaneous I/O cycles.

Advanced RAID Levels

Advanced RAID levels require the use of the array's built-in volume manager. These combination RAID levels provide the protection benefits of RAID 1, 3, or 5 with the performance of RAID 1. To use advanced RAID, first create two or more RAID 1, 3, or 5 arrays, and then join them. The following table provides a description of the advanced RAID levels.

TABLE A-2 Advanced RAID Levels

RAID Level	Description
RAID 3+0 (30)	RAID 3 logical drives that have been joined together using the array's built-in volume manager.
RAID 5+0 (50)	RAID 5 logical drives that have been joined together using the array's volume manager.

Local and Global Spare Drives

The external RAID controllers provide both local spare drive and global spare drive functions. The local spare drive is used only for one specified drive; the global spare drive can be used for any logical drive on the array.

The local spare drive always has higher priority than the global spare drive. Therefore, if a drive fails and both types of spares are available at the same time or a greater size is needed to replace the failed drive, the local spare is used.

If there is a failed drive in the RAID 5 logical drive, replace the failed drive with a new drive to keep the logical drive working. To identify a failed drive, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide* for your array.



Caution – If, when trying to remove a failed drive, you mistakenly remove the wrong drive, you can no longer access the logical drive because you have incorrectly failed another drive.

A local spare drive is a standby drive assigned to serve one specified logical drive. When a member drive of this specified logical drive fails, the local spare drive becomes a member drive and automatically starts to rebuild.

A local spare drive always has higher priority than a global spare drive; that is, if a drive fails and there is a local spare and a global spare drive available, the local spare drive is used.

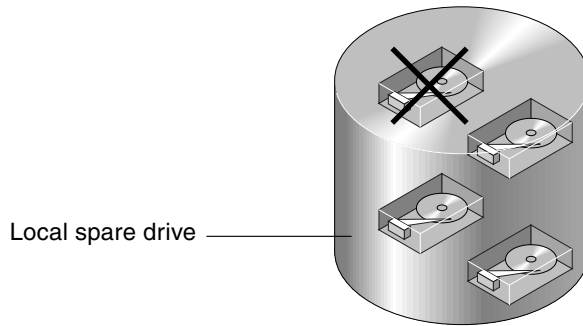


FIGURE A-11 Local (Dedicated) Spare

A global spare drive is available for all logical drives rather than serving only one logical drive (see [FIGURE A-12](#)). When a member drive from any of the logical drives fails, the global spare drive joins that logical drive and automatically starts to rebuild.

A local spare drive always has higher priority than a global spare drive; that is, if a drive fails and there is a local spare and a global spare drive available, the local spare drive is used.

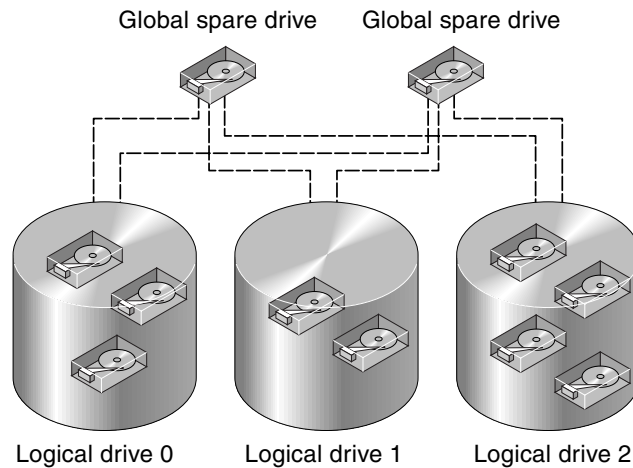


FIGURE A-12 Global Spare

Having Both Local and Global Spares

In [FIGURE A-13](#), the member drives in logical drive 0 are 9-Gbyte drives, and the members in logical drives 1 and 2 are all 4-Gbyte drives.

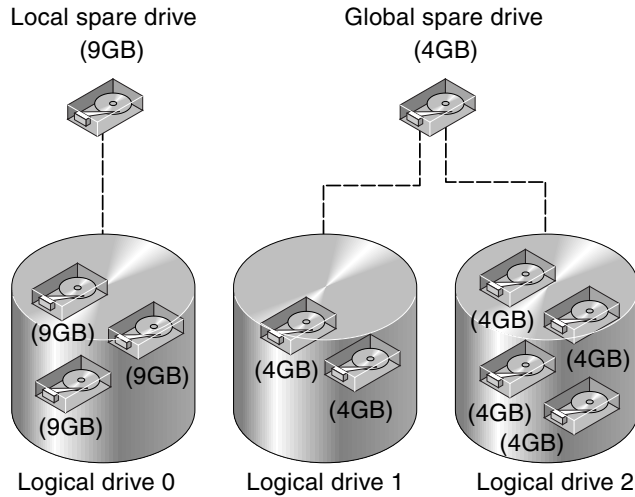


FIGURE A-13 Mixing Local and Global Spares

A local spare drive always has higher priority than a global spare drive; that is, if a drive fails and both a local spare and a global spare drive are available, the local spare drive is used.

In [FIGURE A-13](#), it is not possible for the 4-Gbyte global spare drive to join logical drive 0 because of its insufficient capacity. The 9-Gbyte local spare drive aids logical drive 0 once a drive in this logical drive fails. If the failed drive is in logical drive 1 or 2, the 4-Gbyte global spare drive immediately aids the failed drive.

Monitoring JBODs

This appendix explains how to enable and monitor a standalone JBOD. Note that not all of the array functionality is supported for JBODs. Procedures covered in this appendix include the following:

- “To Enable JBOD Support” on page 223
- “To View Component and Alarm Characteristics” on page 225
- “To Download Firmware for Devices” on page 227
- “To Discover a Drive” on page 227

Note – Most Sun StorEdge 3000 family products offer a standalone JBOD. The Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array is a standalone JBOD. Only the procedures contained in this appendix apply to the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array.

▼ To Enable JBOD Support

To monitor peripheral device condition and events of a JBOD, you first need to enable JBOD support.

1. Choose View → Agent Options Management.

If you are not already logged in as `ssconfig` or `ssadmin`, a password prompt is displayed; type the password. The Agent Options Management window is displayed.

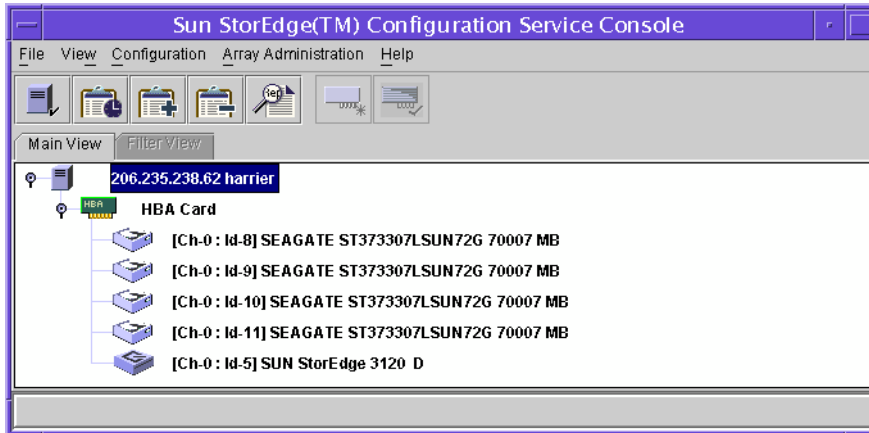
2. Select the Enable JBOD Support check box.

3. To immediately display the JBOD in the main window, you need to probe for new inventory. Choose View → View Server and click Probe.

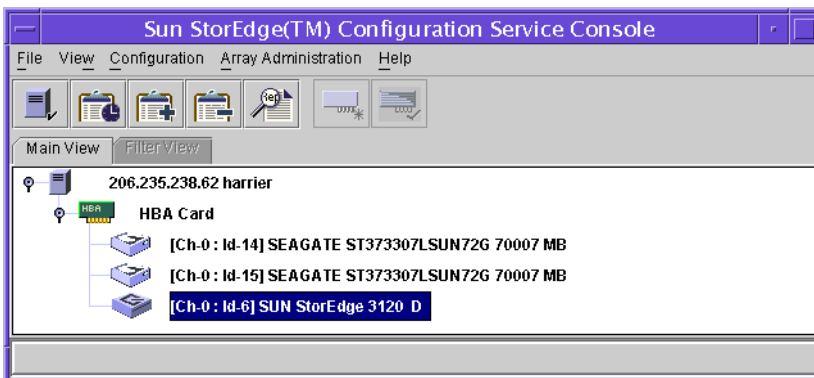
4. Click OK.

The JBOD is displayed in the main window.

In a single-bus configuration, both ports of the JBOD are connected to one HBA on the server, as shown in the following example.




In a split-bus configuration, each port is connected to its own HBA, as shown in the following example. A SAF-TE limitation prevents the main window from showing the drives connected to port A and port B. The program can only monitor the JBOD from the server connected to port B as shown in the following example.



Note – In a split-bus configuration, if each port is connected to different servers, the program can only monitor the JBOD from the server connected to port B.

▼ To View Component and Alarm Characteristics

The View Enclosure window displays the component and alarm characteristics of a JBOD. When a JBOD is in a state that requires attention, a device status state symbol is displayed on the JBOD device in the main window. See [“Device Status” on page 77](#) for a description of the symbols.

1. Select the enclosure icon  for the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array.
2. Choose View → View Enclosure.

To display FRU ID information, click View FRU.



Environmental State

The Environmental State section of the View Enclosure window reports the status of power supplies, fans, and temperature. It provides an overall environmental status of the array as well as the status of the individual components. For a description of the Component/Status list, see [“Environmental State” on page 96](#).

Power Supply and Fan Location

The following illustration identifies the location of the power supplies and fans in the Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array.

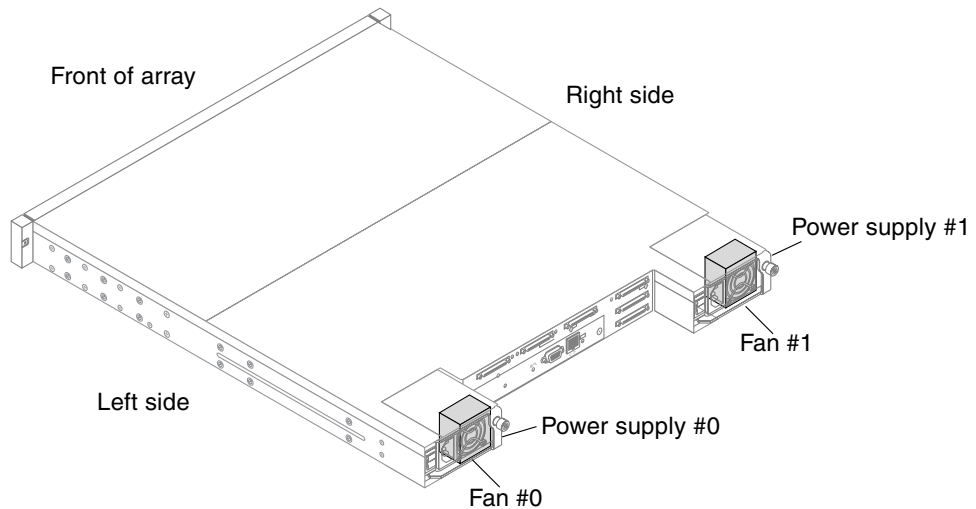


FIGURE B-1 Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array Power Supply and Fan Location

SAF-TE Temperature Sensor Locations

Monitoring temperature at different points within the array is one of the most important SAF-TE functions. High temperatures can cause significant damage if they go unnoticed. There are a number of different sensors at key points in the enclosure. The following table shows the location of each of those sensors, which corresponds to the Temperature # displayed in the View Enclosure Component/Status list.


TABLE B-1 Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI Array SAF-TE Temperature Sensor Locations

Temperature ID	Location
0, 1, 5	Temperature sensor on chassis
2	Temperature sensor on power supply #0
3	Temperature sensor on left side EMU module
4	Temperature sensor on right side EMU module
6	Temperature sensor on power supply #1

▼ To Download Firmware for Devices

For instructions on how to download firmware to disk drives for the Solaris host, refer to the README file in the patch that contains the firmware. For patch information, refer to the release notes for your array.

▼ To Discover a Drive

Drive failure places the JBOD in a critical state. A red device status symbol  is displayed on the JBOD device in the main window. After replacing a failed drive, perform the following steps to discover the drive.

Solaris OS

The following steps describe how to discover the replaced drive on systems running the Solaris OS.

1. **If the drive comes back online automatically (that is, the red device status symbol is dismissed), run the command:**

```
# devfsadm
```

2. **Run the command:**

```
# format
```

3. **If the drive does not come back online automatically (that is, the red device status symbol is not dismissed), perform a reconfiguration reboot by running the command:**

```
# reboot -- -r
```

Linux OS

The following steps describe how to discover the replaced drive on systems running the Linux OS.

1. **Reboot the system.**
2. **Run the command:**

```
# dmesg
```

3. **In the dmesg output, look for a line similar to "Detected scsi disk sdX at scsi<controller>, id <channel>, lun <target>" where the X in sdX is the disk number.**
4. **To create the device entries in /dev, run the command:**

```
# cd /dev; ./MAKEDEV sdX
```

Where the X in sdX is the disk number.

5. **Proceed to fdisk, format, and create a file system.**

Microsoft Windows OS

The following steps describe how to discover the replaced drive on a Microsoft Windows OS.

1. **Install the new drive according to the instructions in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Installation, Operation, and Service Manual* for your array.**
2. **Select View → View Server, and click Rescan.**
3. **To verify that the program recognizes the new drive, select it on the main window.**
4. **Select View → View Physical Drive, and verify the information.**

HP-UX OS

The following steps describe how to discover the replaced drive on systems running the HP-UX OS.

1. Run the command:

```
# ioscan -fnC disk
```

2. Select View → View Server, and click Rescan.
3. To verify that the program recognizes the new drive, select it on the main window.
4. Select View → View Physical Drive, and verify the information.
5. If the drive is still not seen, the host might need to be rebooted. Run the commands:

```
# sync;sync;sync  
# reboot
```

IBM AIX OS

The following steps describe how to discover the replaced drive on systems running the IBM AIX OS.

Note – You must have superuser privileges to run the commands necessary to replace a failed drive.

1. Create the logical drive and map its LUN to the correct host channel.
2. Run the command:

```
# cfgmgr
```

3. Run the command:

```
# lspv
```

Output similar to the following is displayed.

```
hdisk0 000df50dd520b2e rootvg  
hdisk1 000df50d928c3c98 None  
hdisk1 000df50d928c3c98 None
```

4. If any of the drives show “none,” you need to assign a Physical Volume IDENTIFIER.

5. Run the command:

```
# smitty
```

- a. Select Devices.
 - b. Select Fixed Disk.
 - c. Select Change/Show Characteristics of a Disk.
 - d. Select the disk without a PVID.
 - e. Select ASSIGN physical volume identifier, press Tab once to display Yes for the value, and press Return.
 - f. Press Return again to confirm and repeat [Step a-Step f](#) as necessary.
6. From the smitty main menu, select System Storage Management (Physical & Logical Storage) → Logical Volume Manager → Volume Groups → Add a Volume Group.
7. Specify a name for the volume group, make sure the partitions for the journaled file system are large enough, and select the Physical Volume Name(s).
8. From the smitty main menu, select System Storage Management (Physical & Logical Storage) → File Systems → Add / Change / Show / Delete File Systems → (Enhanced) Journaled File System.

9. Select the volume group and set the field.

Run the command:

```
# umount mount point
```


Using the Cluster Configuration (SCSI Only)

For the Sun StorEdge 3310 SCSI array, if you are using Win32, Sun StorEdge Configuration Service can monitor shared SCSI storage. This section covers the following topics:

- [“Planning the Cluster Configuration” on page 233](#)
- [“Cluster Configuration Requirements” on page 234](#)
 - [“To Set Up Cluster Configuration” on page 234](#)

A cluster configuration must be set up with the appropriate hardware first, and it also requires Windows 2000 or 2003 Server and Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) software.

If you are planning to set up a cluster configuration, make sure to read this chapter.

Planning the Cluster Configuration

Before you set up a cluster configuration, you need to determine what type of configuration you want because it can make a difference in how you configure the storage initially.

There are two main types of cluster configuration:

- A hot standby server cluster where all of the LUNs belong to one of the two servers in the cluster. If the server owning the LUNs fails, the LUNs are moved to the second server, which has been idle to this point. A minimum of two LUNs are required in this configuration.
- A load balanced cluster, where some LUNs are maintained on one server and some LUNs are maintained on the other server. Both servers process data at the same time, but they are processing I/O on different LUNs.

A minimum of three LUNs must be defined. This enables one small LUN to be established for quorum disk use and a large LUN to be used on each server in the cluster. The quorum disk maintains the cluster configuration data necessary to recover the cluster in the event of a server failure.

Cluster Configuration Requirements

When you are installing the MSCS software, identify the disk to be used for the quorum disk, which maintains cluster information.

In a cluster configuration, the program runs on only one server at a time, the server that has the quorum disk. If the server running with Sun StorEdge Configuration Service malfunctions, the Cluster Administrator automatically changes the first server's disk load to the second server and start the services on that server.

In a two-server cluster configuration, the cluster itself, with its own IP address, becomes the managed server on the Managed Servers list. Add the cluster to the Managed Servers list as the last step in setting up the cluster.

▼ To Set Up Cluster Configuration

Following is an overview of the steps needed to set up an array in a cluster configuration with two host servers.

1. **Set up the servers:**
 - a. **Set up the two servers, each with a PCI bus and a boot disk that is not a part of the shared SCSI storage.**
 - b. **Install a host adapter card such as Ultra-Wide, differential host adapter, in each server and set a unique SI ID for each host adapter on the shared SCSI bus.**
 - c. **Install two network adapter cards on each server.**
 - d. **Install the latest Windows updates on the boot disk of each server.**
2. **Install the dual active-active storage subsystem and connect it to both host adapters.**

Refer to the supplied documentation for installation steps.
3. **Install the agent on each server:**
 - a. **Stop the services on one server before installing it on the other server.**

- b. **Ensure that the service is running on a server that has access to a host LUN mapped on logical drive assigned to primary controller.**
- c. **See the appropriate installation chapter for specific steps for installing the agent.**

After installing the agent, you do not need to reboot. However, once the agent is installed, be sure to stop the services on one of the servers.

Note – In the next few steps, you will work with one server only as an example.

4. Install the console software.

You can install the console on one of the servers or on any computer on the network where the servers reside. The program enables you to configure and monitor the array remotely. See the appropriate installation chapter for detailed steps.

5. Add the server that has started the services to the console’s Managed Servers list (see “To Add Servers” on page 12).

Be sure to select Auto Discovery and add the `ssmon` password.

6. Use the console software to verify and configure the storage on the active server and then reboot that server.

Your storage array might already be preconfigured on the dual active–active storage subsystem. You need to look at the configuration in the tree view to determine whether this is the case.

If the storage is not configured or you want to change the configuration, configure all of the LUNs on one server. Later, after the MSCS software is installed, you can allocate the storage between the servers with Cluster Administrator.

7. Use Computer Management to create partitions and format the LUNs on the active server:

a. If necessary, reassign drive letters for the disks.

Note that partitions must be formatted with NTFS.

Windows sees the LUNs on the dual active–active controllers as being on both servers in the cluster. You can create partitions and logical drives on only one server. Later, after MSCS is installed, you can use the Cluster Administrator to apportion the storage between the two servers.

The drive letters for the shared SCSI storage for the two servers must be the same. If there is an additional CD-ROM drive or external hard disk on one server and not on the other, you might need to reassign the drive letters for the shared storage. After this step, check them on the other server to make sure they are the same.

b. Write down the drive letters assigned to the shared storage.

8. **Access the second server, start Computer Management and make sure that the second server has the same drive letters as the first.**

If it does not, reassign the drive letters so that they are consistent on both servers.

9. **Shut down the second server.**
10. **Install the MSCS software on the first server and reboot.**
11. **Start Cluster Administrator and make sure that it can see the cluster.**
12. **Access the second server, install MSCS on that server by joining it to the first, and reboot.**
13. **Reboot the second server and verify in Cluster Administrator that both servers are included in the cluster.**
14. **Adjust the disk groups in the Cluster Administrator.**

Make sure that the quorum disk and the other disks, if any, are together in one disk group under the first server where you originally configured the storage. Refer to the MSCS documentation for details to perform this step.

Note – Once you put the two LUNs in the same disk group, you have an empty disk group that you can delete.

15. **Add the services to the group that has the quorum disk on the first server:**
 - a. **On both servers, stop each of the three services, Configuration Service Startup, Configuration Service Monitor, and Configuration Service Server, and set them to manual.**
 - b. **Use Cluster Administrator to install each service as a resource to the group that has the quorum disk.**

For each service, enter it in the following order and type its name in the format indicated (with the two words run together). After each service is installed, bring the service online to start it on the active server.

Enter the services as generic services. You are asked to indicate the dependencies for each resource. The dependencies in the group are as follows:

- Disk associated with the quorum disk
- Other disk, if any to be added to this group
- Configuration ServiceStartup
- Configuration ServiceMonitor
- Configuration ServiceServer

Configuration ServiceStartup is dependent on the two disks that are already in the group. Configuration ServiceMonitor is dependent on Configuration Service Startup, and Configuration ServiceServer is dependent on Configuration Service Monitor.

16. For the two cluster servers to be displayed as one icon under the cluster IP address, edit CLUSTER.TXT.

The file is located in the same directory as the console files. It is on the system disk of the computer where the console is installed. If Drive C is the system disk, the path is:

C:\Program Files\Sun\sscs

The following text shows the contents of the file:

```
#Edit this file to map the cluster IP address to several
#servers constituting the cluster.
#The format of the entry is:
#<Cluster IP Address>=<server1 IP Address>:<server2 IP Address>
#The IP address must be in dot form.
#Example: If the cluster IP address is 151.239.130.70 and the
#IP addresses of individual servers are 151.239.130.71 and
#151.239.130.72, the entry would be:
# 151.239.130.70=151.239.130.71:151.239.130.72
#
#IMPORTANT NOTE:
#Use only the Cluster IP address to configure a cluster
#server on the Configuration Service console.
#
#151.239.130.70=151.239.130.71:151.239.130.72
```

17. Edit the last line of the file to insert the IP address of the cluster and then the IP addresses of the two servers that make up the cluster by removing the number symbol (#).

18. Start the console and remove the first server from the Managed Servers list, and add the cluster as a server to the list.

19. Access the Server List Setup function. See [“To Add Servers” on page 12](#).

Be sure to select Auto Discovery and add the `ssmon` password. If you type in the cluster name, the program supplies the IP address if your network has DNS.

At this point, the cluster configuration is properly configured to work with the program. If the server that has the services running on it malfunctions, its disk groups are transferred to the second server and the Cluster Administrator automatically starts the services on that server.

Note – When one server fails, it can take as long as 15 minutes for the cluster icon in the console to turn from purple to gray and perhaps another 10 minutes before it goes back to purple again.

If you want to have a load balanced configuration with some of the storage running on the other server, you need to use the Cluster Administrator to move one or more disk groups to the other server.

Determining Host Worldwide Names (Fibre Channel and SATA Only)

This appendix explains how to determine the HBA worldwide name (WWN), the FC array worldwide node name (WWNN), and the FC array worldwide port name (WWPN). Steps include:

- [“To Determine the HBA WWN” on page 239](#)
- [“To Determine the FC Array WWNN” on page 243](#)
- [“To Determine the FC Array WWPN” on page 244](#)

▼ To Determine the HBA WWN

Prior to using the LUN Filter feature, it is helpful to identify which Sun StorEdge 3510 Fibre Channel array is connected to which HBA card, and the WWN assigned to each card.

Solaris OS

The following steps explain how to determine the HBA WWN on a Solaris host. To determine an HBA WWN, you must first display devices attached to that host.

1. **If you have a new HBA device installed on your computer, reboot the computer.**
2. **Type the following command:**

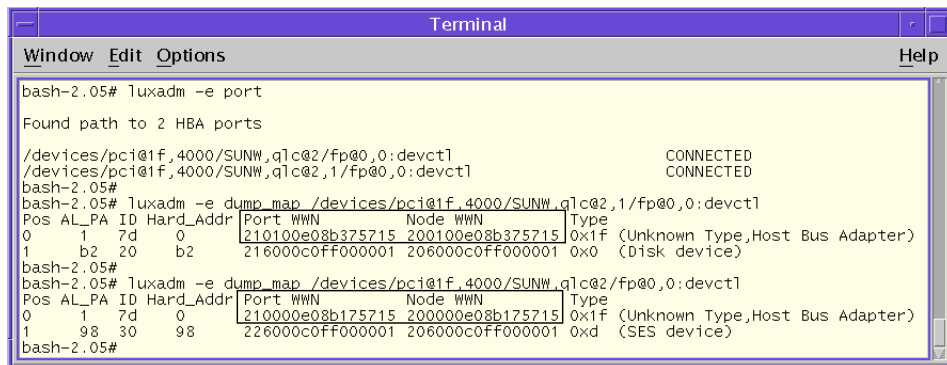
```
# luxadm -e port
```

All attached devices are displayed.

3. Type the following command:

```
# luxadm -e dump_map
```

The output displayed includes HBA port and node WWNs.



```
bash-2.05# luxadm -e port
Found path to 2 HBA ports
/devices/pci@1f,4000/SUNW,q1c@2/fp@0,0:devct1      CONNECTED
/devices/pci@1f,4000/SUNW,q1c@2,1/fp@0,0:devct1  CONNECTED
bash-2.05#
bash-2.05# luxadm -e dump_map /devices/pci@1f,4000/SUNW,q1c@2,1/fp@0,0:devct1
Pos AL_PA ID Hard_Addr Port WWN      Node WWN      Type
0 1 7d 0 210100e08b375715 200100e08b375715 0x1f (Unknown Type,Host Bus Adapter)
1 b2 20 b2 216000c0ff000001 206000c0ff000001 0x0 (Disk device)
bash-2.05#
bash-2.05# luxadm -e dump_map /devices/pci@1f,4000/SUNW,q1c@2/fp@0,0:devct1
Pos AL_PA ID Hard_Addr Port WWN      Node WWN      Type
0 1 7d 0 210000e08b175715 200000e08b175715 0x1f (Unknown Type,Host Bus Adapter)
1 98 30 98 226000c0ff000001 206000c0ff000001 0xd (SES device)
bash-2.05#
```

Linux and Microsoft Windows OS

The following steps explain how to determine the HBA WWN on a Linux and Microsoft Windows host.

1. Boot a specific host, and note the BIOS version and HBA card models connected to your host.
2. Access the HBA card's BIOS with the appropriate command (alt-q or control-a are commonly used).
If the host has multiple HBA cards, select the card which is connected to the storage.
3. Scan the card to look for devices attached to it (usually with the Scan Fibre Devices or the Fibre Disk Utility).

The node name (or similar label) is the HBA worldwide name.

Example with a Qlogic card:

ID	Vendor	Product	Rev	Node Name	Port ID
0	Qlogic	QLA22xx Adapter	B	210000E08B02DE2F	0000EF

HP-UX OS

The following steps describe how to determine the HBA WWN on an HP-UX host. To determine an HBA WWN, you must first display devices attached to that host.

1. Determine the device name by typing the command

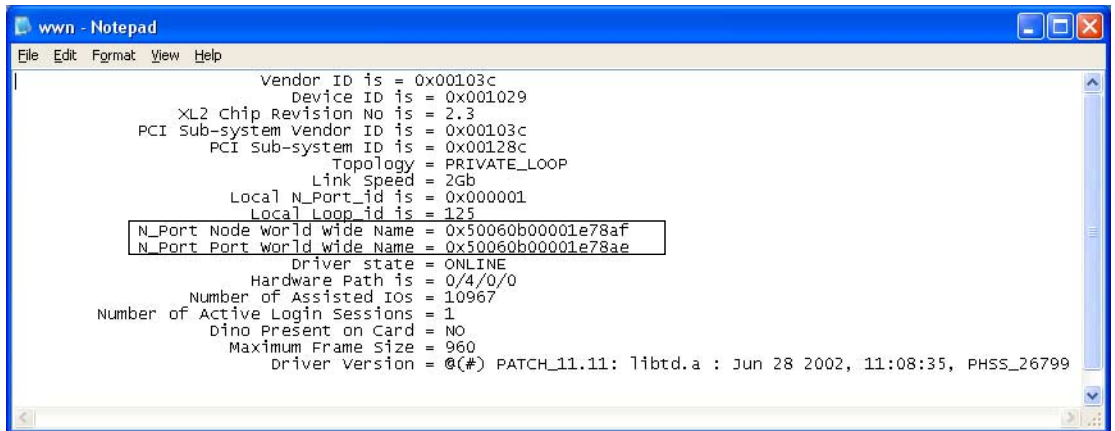
```
# ioscan -fnC fc
```

All attached devices are displayed.

2. Type the following command:

```
# fcmsutil /device name /
```

The output displayed includes HBA port and node WWNs.



```
wwn - Notepad
File Edit Format View Help
Vendor ID is = 0x00103c
Device ID is = 0x001029
  XL2 Chip Revision No is = 2.3
PCI Sub-system Vendor ID is = 0x00103c
  PCI Sub-system ID is = 0x00128c
    Topology = PRIVATE_LOOP
    Link Speed = 2Gb
    Local N_Port_id is = 0x000001
    Local Loop_id is = 125
  N_Port Node world wide Name = 0x50060b00001e78af
  N_Port Port world wide Name = 0x50060b00001e78ae
    Driver state = ONLINE
    Hardware Path is = 0/4/0/0
    Number of Assisted Ios = 10967
Number of Active Login Sessions = 1
  Dino Present on Card = NO
    Maximum Frame Size = 960
    Driver version = @(##) PATCH_11.11: libtd.a : Jun 28 2002, 11:08:35, PHSS_26799
```

IBM AIX OS

The following steps describe how to determine the HBA WWN on an IBM AIX host.

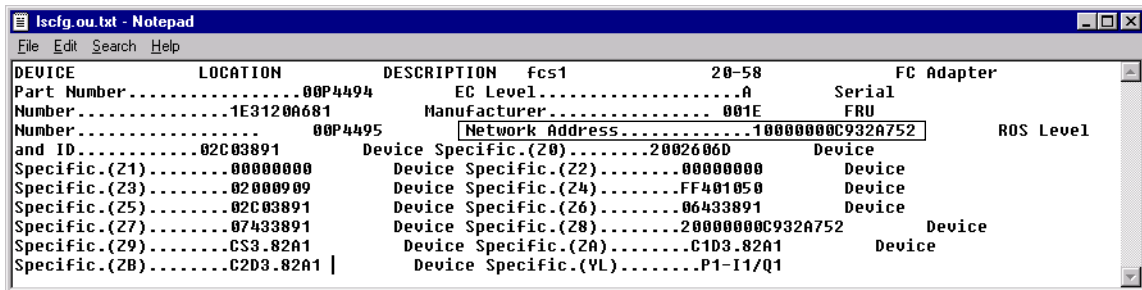
1. Determine the device name by typing the command

```
# lscfg |grep fc
```

2. Type the following command:


```
# lscfg -v1 device name
```

The output displayed includes the network address, which is the HBA WWN.

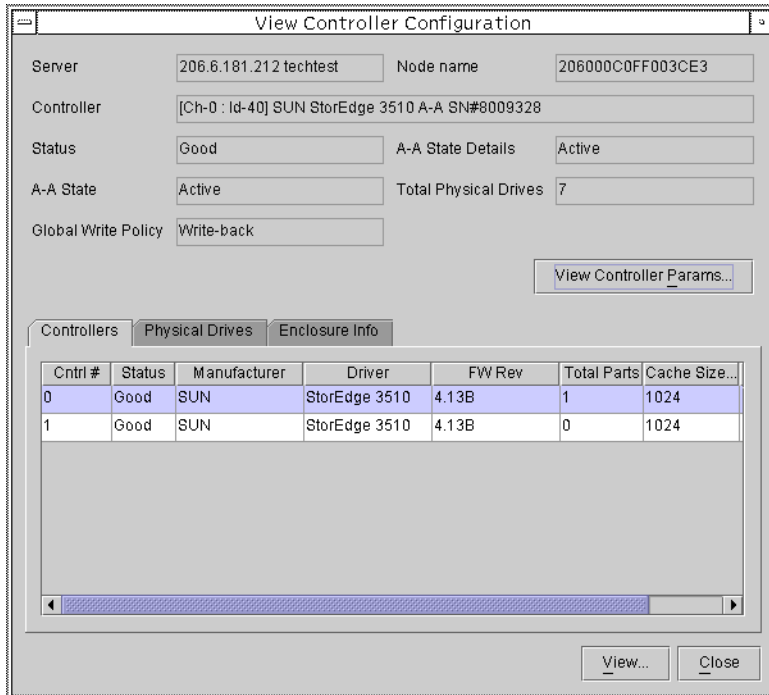


```
lscfg.ou.txt - Notepad
File Edit Search Help
DEVICE          LOCATION          DESCRIPTION fcs1          20-58          FC Adapter
Part Number.....00P4494          EC Level.....A          Serial
Number.....1E3120A681          Manufacturer..... 001E          FRU
Number.....          00P4495          Network Address.....10000000C932A752          ROS Level
and ID.....02C03891          Device Specific.(Z0).....2002606D          Device
Specific.(Z1).....00000000          Device Specific.(Z2).....00000000          Device
Specific.(Z3).....02000909          Device Specific.(Z4).....FF401050          Device
Specific.(Z5).....02C03891          Device Specific.(Z6).....06433891          Device
Specific.(Z7).....07433891          Device Specific.(Z8).....20000000C932A752          Device
Specific.(Z9).....CS3.82A1          Device Specific.(ZA).....C1D3.82A1          Device
Specific.(ZB).....C2D3.82A1 |          Device Specific.(VL).....P1-I1/Q1
```

▼ To Determine the FC Array WWNN


1. Double-click the array icon  in the main Configuration Service window, or select it and choose View → View Controller.

The Node name is displayed in the Node name field in the View Controller Configuration window.

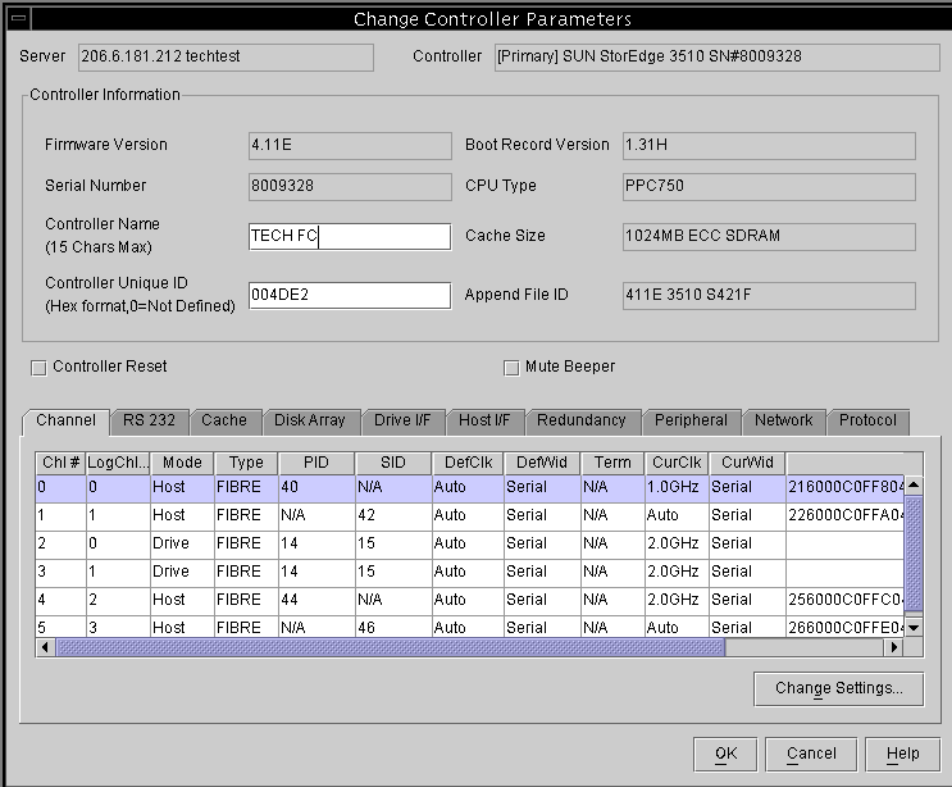


Note – The WWNN information is also included in the xml report generated by the console.

▼ To Determine the FC Array WWPN

1. Double-click the array icon  in the main Configuration Service window, or select it and choose View → View Controller.
2. Click View Controller Parameters.

The RAID Controller Parameters window is displayed. On the Channel tab, scroll all the way to the right to display the WWPN.



The screenshot shows the 'Change Controller Parameters' window. At the top, it displays 'Server: 206.6.181.212 techtest' and 'Controller: [Primary] SUN StorEdge 3510 SN#8009328'. Below this is the 'Controller Information' section with fields for Firmware Version (4.11E), Boot Record Version (1.31H), Serial Number (8009328), CPU Type (PPC750), Controller Name (TECH FC), Cache Size (1024MB ECC SDRAM), Controller Unique ID (004DE2), and Append File ID (411E 3510 S421F). There are checkboxes for 'Controller Reset' and 'Mute Beeper'. The 'Channel' tab is selected, showing a table of controller channels. The table has columns: Chi #, LogChl., Mode, Type, PID, SID, DefClk, DefWid, Term, CurClk, CurWid, and WWPN. The WWPN column is partially visible on the right side of the table.

Chi #	LogChl.	Mode	Type	PID	SID	DefClk	DefWid	Term	CurClk	CurWid	WWPN
0	0	Host	FIBRE	40	N/A	Auto	Serial	N/A	1.0GHz	Serial	216000C0FF804
1	1	Host	FIBRE	N/A	42	Auto	Serial	N/A	Auto	Serial	226000C0FFA04
2	0	Drive	FIBRE	14	15	Auto	Serial	N/A	2.0GHz	Serial	
3	1	Drive	FIBRE	14	15	Auto	Serial	N/A	2.0GHz	Serial	
4	2	Host	FIBRE	44	N/A	Auto	Serial	N/A	2.0GHz	Serial	256000C0FFC04
5	3	Host	FIBRE	N/A	46	Auto	Serial	N/A	Auto	Serial	266000C0FFE04

Note – The WWPN information is also included in the xml report generated by the console.

Email and SNMP

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service has full event monitoring and email notification capabilities. The consoles can send SMTP email messages to a specified list of email addresses. Some email systems, like Microsoft Exchange, can be configured or programmed with scripts to page administration personnel based on events. Some paging services also support sending these email messages to a pager.

The agents place events in the OS error logs. Agents can also send SNMP traps about mass storage events to an enterprise management console, such as HP OpenView. For a list of monitoring software that uses SNMP, visit the Sun Management Center at <http://www.sun.com/software/solaris/sunmanagementcenter/>.

This appendix explains how to set up consoles to send email messages. It also explains how to configure servers to send traps to SNMP management consoles, describes the trap format, and gives background information about SNMP. An additional method for sending SNMP traps that does not require Sun StorEdge Configuration Service is also discussed. Topics covered in this chapter include:

- “How SNMP Works” on page 246
- “Using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service to Send SNMP Traps” on page 250

For details about event monitoring, see “Event Log” on page 109.

How SNMP Works

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is one of the most widely used protocols for network management. It does what its name says—it manages network devices in a relatively simple manner. SNMP is a simple, unacknowledged, connectionless protocol.

SNMP was originally developed to work under the umbrella of the Internet suite of protocols, primarily in TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) transport protocols. Since then, SNMP has been implemented to work over other common transport protocols, such as Novell's IPX/SPX (Internet Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange).

SNMP Trap Messages

Agents use SNMP to send information to enterprise management systems.

Once a server is configured to send traps, event information flows to that system.

Trap messages contain the following information:

- OID (Object Identifier) 1.3.6.1.4.1.2294.1.2
- Event Date (MM, DD,YY, such as 01,22,98)
- Event Time (HH:MM:SS, such as 15:07:23)
- Server Address and Name (IP Address Name, such as 192.187.249.187 Administration)
- Card Name
- Event Severity (Informational, Warning, Critical)
- The text message

The information that is displayed and its format are dependent on the SNMP management console you are using.

The file `RST_OID.MIB` must be loaded into the enterprise management console for traps to be received. On a Solaris, Linux, and HP-UX OS, this file is located in `/opt/SUNWsscs/ssagent`. On an IBM AIX OS, this file is located in `/usr/SUNWsscs/ssagent`. On Microsoft Windows, this file is located in `\Program Files\Sun\ssagent`.

Agents and Managers

The SNMP software model consists of agents and managers. An agent is the software that enables variables in the managed device to be monitored. The agent software is either embedded in the device that is managed or running on a computer to which the device is connected.

The manager or management console is the network monitoring software that uses SNMP to send requests to the agents about the variables. The manager polls the agents periodically because the values of variables change. SNMP managers typically analyze the data received from the agents and make it available to the user in a graphical display. The data can be stored in a database for historical and trend analysis.

In addition to responding to the SNMP manager's requests, agents can send unsolicited notifications or traps to the management station. This is similar to interrupts in conventional software.

Management consoles can take various actions in response to a trap. Usually, traps are logged, and the information in them is forwarded through a notification scheme to the interested user. Traps can also cause the SNMP manager to initiate further action, such as querying the agent with more requests to find out the current status of the network entity or launching an application.

Management Information Base (MIB)

On a network, each device instrumented by SNMP agents has one or more variables or objects associated with it. An example of a typical variable might be one that keeps track of the name of the device. These variables or objects are described in a text file called `Management Information Base (MIB)`. A MIB is a precise textual definition of variables being managed. The procedures for defining a MIB have been established by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) of the International Standards Organization (ISO).

SNMP Objects

Some variables for network management are common to all LAN network devices. Many of these variables have been standardized and are referred to as MIB-II variables and MIB-II extensions. The IETF has also defined the procedures for MIBs that are not in a standard MIB-II category. These variables are listed in private enterprise MIBs.

Variables are listed under the entry of the private enterprise MIB. For example, the object ID 1.3.6.1.4.1.2294.1.2 refers to an object ID (or OID) of a variable for keeping track of the agent version under one of Configuration Service's MIBs.

The chart in [FIGURE E-1](#) shows how the OID was derived. The check marks indicate the nodes in the OID. In a MIB, the data of a specific variable or object resides below its OID.

Sun's tree node is 2294. Every private enterprise wanting to develop agents to recognize its own devices can apply to the IETF for its own tree node.

SNMP Request Types

The SNMP operations that support accessing MIB data are *Get*, *GetNext*, and *Set*. *Get* retrieves a scalar value from a table entry field value, given an index value. *GetNext* is used to traverse the instances of table entries, with each command returning the next sequential value in the column (or field) of interest. The *Set* operation is used to create or change the value of a MIB variable.

SNMP Security

Setting values raises the issue of security. SNMP V1 (version 1) has a simple security scheme. Each protocol data unit (PDU) contains a community string, which is like a combination of user name and password. Each agent can be configured for a particular community string. An agent does not respond to a request sent to it except when the community string in the request PDU matches the community string in its own configuration.

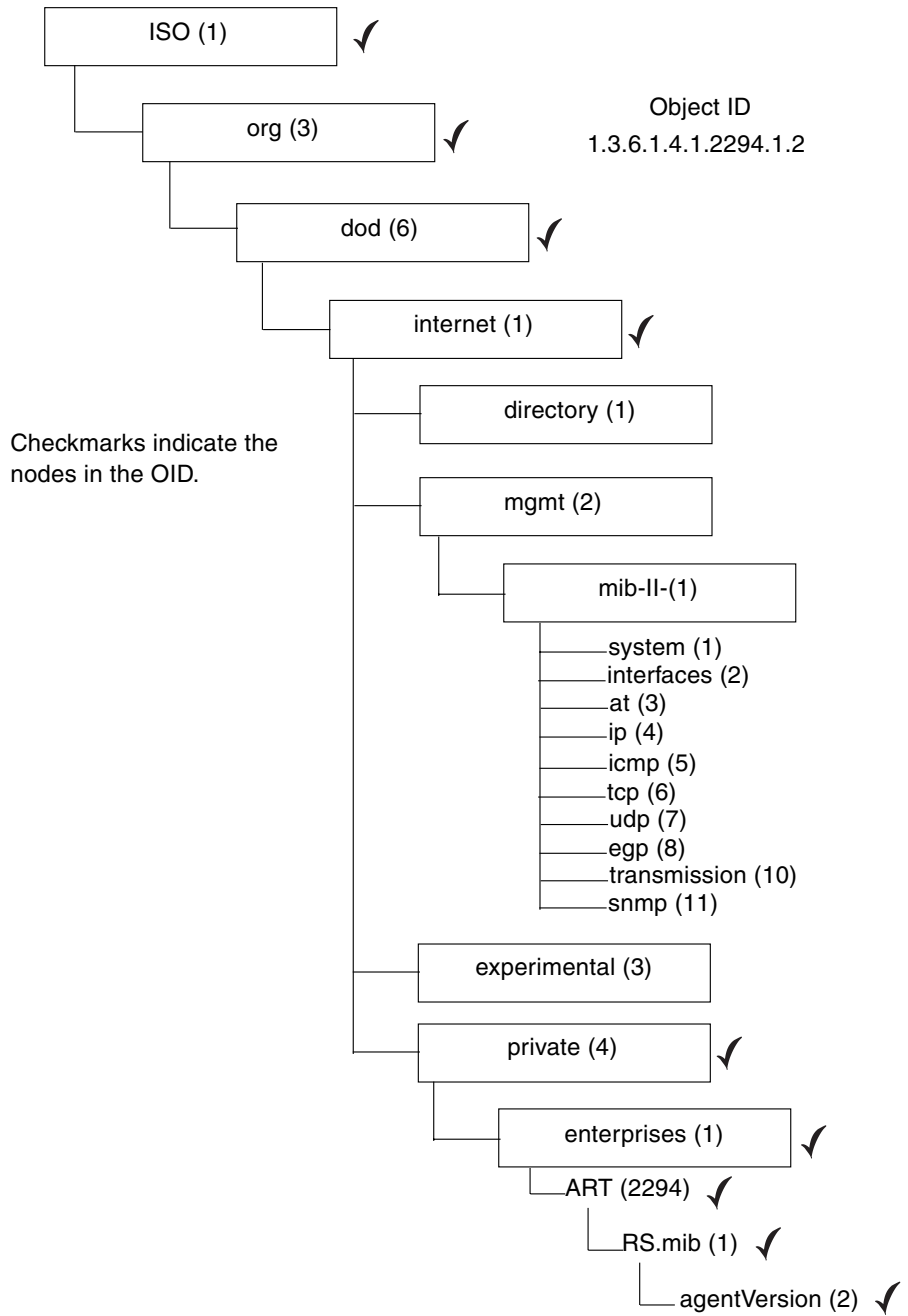


FIGURE E-1 Object Identifier of a MIB Variable

Using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service to Send SNMP Traps

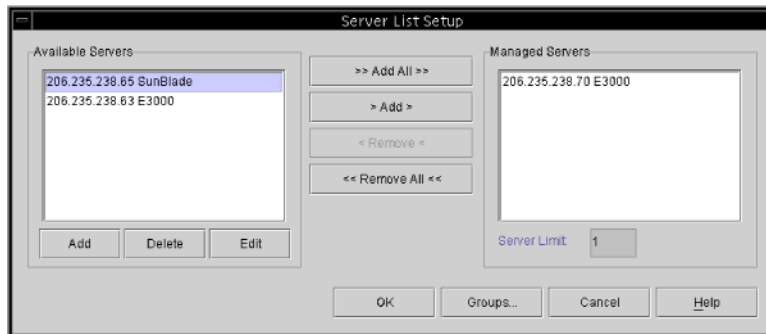
This section explains how to use Sun StorEdge Configuration Service to send email messages for each server.

▼ To Send Email Messages for Each Server

Configure the console to send email messages for each managed server through the Server List Setup function.

1. Choose File → Server List Setup.

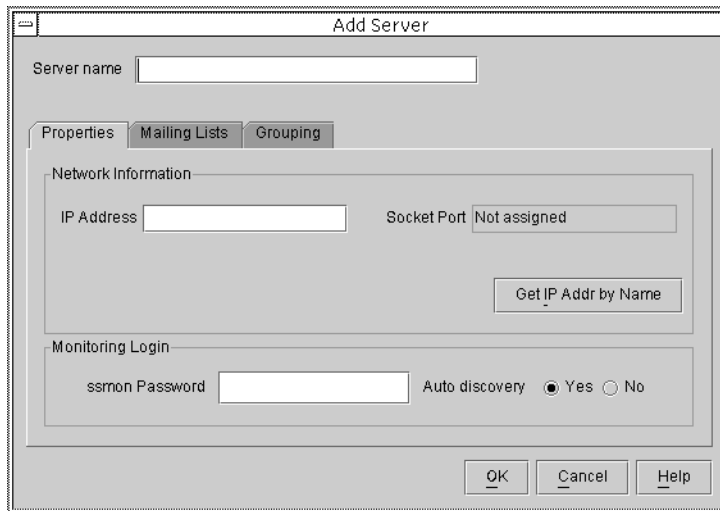
The Server Setup window is displayed.



2. Click Add.

If the server has already been added, you need to move it to the Available Servers list and click Edit.

The Add Server window or Edit Server window is displayed. The two windows have the same fields.

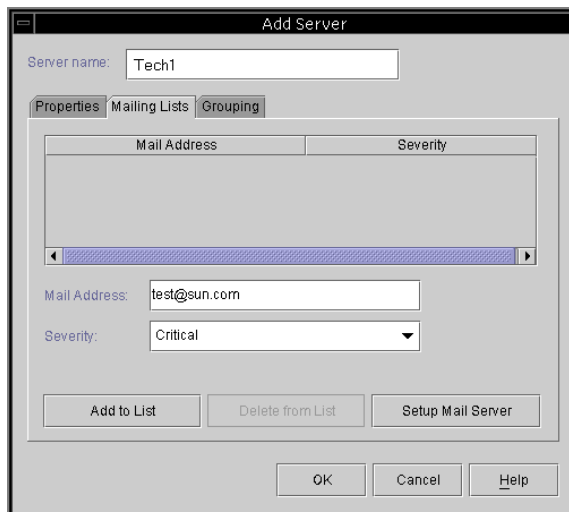


3. If you have not already added the server, fill in the information about the Properties tab.

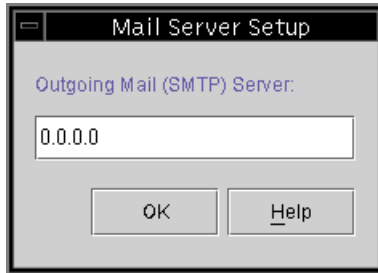
For detailed information see [“Add a server:” on page 13.](#)

4. To send event messages using email, select the Mailing Lists tab.

The Add Server window is displayed with Mailing Lists selected.



- a. For each user, type an email address in the Mail Address field.
- b. In the Severity list box, scroll through the list and select the desired one.
- c. Click Add to List.
To delete a user from the list, select the mail address and click Delete from List.
- d. Indicate the mail server. Click Setup Mail Server.
The Mail Server Setup window is displayed.



Type the IP address or name of the Simple Mail Transport Protocol (SMTP) mail server that delivers the email messages to the destination addresses specified earlier.

- e. Click OK when you are satisfied with the information about the Mail Server window.
The Add Server or Edit Server window is displayed.
5. Click OK when you are satisfied with the information about the Add Server or Edit Server window.
The Server Setup window is displayed.
6. If you want to add additional servers, repeat Steps 2 through 5 for each server.
7. If necessary, move the server or servers you want this console to control to the Managed Servers list.
If you are editing a server, you must move it back to the Available Servers list.
8. Click OK to return to the main window.

▼ Setting Up Servers to Send Traps

If you have an enterprise management console on your network—for example, HP OpenView or IBM NetView, you can configure servers to send traps about events to the console. This section describes the configuration steps needed.

Note – You need to follow the instructions in this section only if you want to send SNMP traps to other enterprise management consoles.



Caution – If HP OpenView is installed on the same server that you are setting up to send traps, to avoid initialization errors, you need to reconfigure the system resources. For instructions on reconfiguring system resources, see the troubleshooting item [“Symptom: HP OpenView won’t install or the trap daemon won’t start.”](#) on page 262.

Microsoft Windows Servers

To configure a Microsoft Windows server to send SNMP traps to one or more enterprise management consoles, you need to configure each SNMP service on the server to make sure that:

- The server lists the community string or community name of the enterprise management console.
- The server lists the enterprise management console as the recipient of traps from the Microsoft Windows agent software.

▼ To Check the Community String for a Microsoft Windows Host

You can use the default community name or community string of public. However, choosing a community name other than public provides more security because it limits the communication to only those computers that have the specified community string.

1. **For Windows 2000, choose Start → Programs → Administrative Tools → Services.**
For Windows 2003, choose Start → All Programs → Administrative Tools → Services.
2. **Double-click SNMP Service, and then click Properties.**
3. **The Microsoft SNMP Properties window is displayed.**
For Windows 2000 or Windows 2003, if you do not have the SNMP service installed:
 - a. **Choose Start → Control Panel → Add or Remove Programs.**

- b. Select **Add/Remove Windows Components**.
- c. Select **Management and Monitoring Tools**, and click **Details**.
- d. Select **Simple Network Management Protocol**, and click **OK**.
- e. Click **Next**.
- f. Choose **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Network Connections**.
- g. Select **Local Connection**.
- h. Select **Properties**.

Note – You might need to insert the Windows 2000 or Windows 2003 CD to enable the computer to copy the necessary files for the SNMP service.

4. Click the **Security** tab in the **Microsoft SNMP Properties** window to display the **Security** settings.
5. **Make sure that the community name or community string that you want to use for the server is specified in the Accepted community names list.**

If the community name is not already on the list, click **Add** to display the **SNMP Service Configuration** window. Type the new name in the **Community Name** field, specify the rights in the **Community Rights** field and click **Add** in that window. The **Security** tab is displayed with the new name on the **Accepted Community Names** list.

Note – Community names or community strings are case-sensitive.

6. **(Optional) If desired, change the default setting of Accept SNMP Packets from Any Host to Only Accept SNMP Packets from These Hosts and add the network address of the enterprise management computer that receives the traps from the agent on the server.**

To add the network address of the computer with Sun StorEdge Configuration Service console software to the lower list box, click **Add** to access the **Security Configuration** window. Type the IP address in the **Entry** box and click **Add** in that window. The **Security** tab reappears with the **Configuration Service management console computer's** address.

7. Click **OK**.

▼ To Specify the Trap Recipient for a Microsoft Windows Host

In this procedure, you are listing the enterprise management console as a recipient of traps from the server.

Note – For the procedure, you need the IP address of the enterprise management console that receives the traps. The procedure also requires the same community name as specified in the preceding sections.

The steps for specifying an enterprise management console computer as the recipient of the agent traps are as follows.

1. **Click the Traps tab of the Microsoft SNMP Properties window to display the Traps settings.**
2. **Make sure the same community name is specified as the community name that was indicated in the Security tab earlier.**

If you need to correct the community name, type the name in the Community Name field and click Add. If another name is already in the entry field, it is retained after you type over it. To remove a name, select it and click Remove.
3. **Add the IP address of the enterprise management console in the Trap Destinations list:**
 - a. **Click Add.**

The Service Configuration window is displayed.
 - b. **Type the IP address in the Entry field and click Add.**

The Traps tab is displayed with the new network address in the Trap Destinations list.
 - c. **Type each IP address in the following format: AAA.BBB.CCC.DDD**

You do not need to type leading zeros. An example of an appropriate address is:
192.168.100.1
4. **If you want to send optional traps to another enterprise management console, type the network address of that management workstation.**

If you have more than one enterprise management console, each one needs to have its address indicated here.
5. **Click OK to confirm your settings.**
6. **Click Close to leave the Network window.**
7. **Exit Microsoft Windows and restart the server.**

If you are planning to install Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, you do not have to reboot until after you install the software.

▼ To Set Up a Solaris Host

For a Solaris host, you can generate SNMP version 1 traps through an interface to an SNMP trap daemon called `sstrapd`. By default, this daemon does not start automatically during the boot process. The following steps describe how to enable trap processing.

1. **Create the file `/var/opt/SUNWsscs/ssagent/sstrapd.conf` using any standard text editor.**

This file contains the name or the IP address of the SNMP manager console or consoles. If there is more than one console, list them on separate lines.

2. **Edit the file `/etc/init.d/ssagent` and remove the comment marks from the SNMP-related start section. These lines are marked by an initial double hash mark (`##`).**

3. **Save the file after these edits.**

The `sstrapd` daemon starts at the next boot or can be started immediately by running the following command

```
/etc/init.d/ssagent uptrap
```

This starts the `sstrapd` daemon as well as the other two daemons if they are not currently running. Only one instance of each daemon is running at this point, whether or not any daemons were previously running.

▼ To Set Up a Linux Host

For a Linux host, you can generate SNMP version 1 traps through an interface to an SNMP trap daemon called `sstrapd`. By default, this daemon does not start automatically during the boot process. The following steps describe how to enable trap processing.

1. **Create the file `/var/opt/SUNWsscs/ssagent/sstrapd.conf` using any standard text editor.**

This file must be created with a list of either system names or IP addresses (one per line) for the SNMP manager consoles. The file can contain blank lines and comment lines.

2. **Edit the file `/etc/init.d/ssagent` and remove the comment marks from the SNMP-related start section.**

These lines are marked by an initial double hash mark (`##`).

3. Save the file after these edits.

The `sstrapd` daemon starts at the next boot or can be started immediately by running the following command

```
/etc/init.d/ssagent uptrap
```

This starts the `sstrapd` daemon as well as the other two daemons if they are not currently running. Only one instance of each daemon is running at this point, whether or not any daemons were previously running.

▼ To Set Up an HP-UX Host

1. Create the file `/var/opt/SUNWsscs/ssagent/sstrapd.conf` using any standard text editor.

This file must be created with a list of either system names or IP addresses (one per line) for the SNMP manager consoles. The file can contain blank lines and comment lines.

2. Edit the file `/sbin/init.d/ssagent` using any standard text editor.

Change the following line:

```
# Look at environment variable from /etc/rc.config.d/ssagent to  
see if we should start SNMP trap daemon sstrapd: if ["$SSTRAPD"=  
1]; then P trap daemon sstrapd:
```

to

```
# Look at environment variable from /etc/rc.config.d/ssagent to  
see if we should start SNMP trap daemon sstrapd: if ["$SSTRAPD"=  
0]; then P trap daemon sstrapd:
```

3. Save the file after these edits.

The `sstrapd` daemon starts at the next boot or can be started immediately by running the following command

```
/sbin/init.d/ssagent start
```

This starts the `sstrapd` daemon as well as the other two daemons if they are not currently running. Only one instance of each daemon is running at this point, whether or not any daemons were previously running.

▼ To Set Up an IBM AIX Host

For an IBM AIX host, you can generate SNMP version 1 traps through an interface to an SNMP trap daemon called `sstrapd`. By default, this daemon does not start automatically during the boot process. The following steps describe how to enable trap processing.

1. **Create the file `/var/opt/SUNWsscs/ssagent/sstrapd.conf` using any standard text editor.**

This file must be created with a list of either system names or IP addresses (one per line) for the SNMP manager consoles. The file can contain blank lines and comment lines.

2. **Edit the file `/etc/ssagent` and remove the comment marks from the SNMP-related start section.**

These lines are marked by an initial double hash mark (`##`).

3. **Save the file after these edits.**

The `sstrapd` daemon starts at the next boot or can be started immediately by running the following command

```
/etc/ssagent uptrap
```

This starts the `sstrapd` daemon as well as the other two daemons if they are not currently running. Only one instance of each daemon is running at this point, whether or not any daemons were previously running.

Sending SNMP Traps Without Using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service

For an alternative method for sending SNMP traps that does not require Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide*.

Troubleshooting

This chapter provides troubleshooting suggestions for the following symptoms:

- “Symptom: A server is not responding or a server may be down.” on page 260
- “Symptom: No logical drives are listed when trying to add a logical volume from existing logical drives.” on page 261
- “Symptom: An IP address of a server in a DHCP environment has changed.” on page 261
- “Symptom: Traps are not received from a server.” on page 262
- “Symptom: HP OpenView won’t install or the trap daemon won’t start.” on page 262
- “Symptom: The console does not show changes when hardware is added or replaced.” on page 263
- “Symptom: Logical drive is not present on a Solaris host.” on page 263
- “Symptom: Environmental alarms are not being reported.” on page 263
- “Symptom: Cannot silence the alarm.” on page 264
- “Symptom: The console appears to run slowly.” on page 264
- “Symptom: Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter stops working.” on page 264
- “Symptom: (UNIX OS) The online help is not displayed.” on page 265

Symptom: A server is not responding or a server may be down.

Make sure the services are running at the server.

1. (UNIX OS) Run the following command:

```
# ps -e | grep ss
```

The names `ssmon` and `ssserver` should both be present in the output. If they are not, proceed to Step 2. If they are, proceed to Step 4.

(Windows 2000) Choose Start → Programs → Administrative Tools → Computer Management. Click Services & Applications → Services and verify that SUNWscsd Monitor, SUNWscsd Server, and SUNWscsd Startup services are started. If they are not, proceed to Step 2. If they are, proceed to Step 4.

(Windows 2003) Choose Start → Administrative Tools → Computer Management → Services & Applications → Services and verify that SUNWscsd Monitor, SUNWscsd Server, and SUNWscsd Startup services are started. If they are not, proceed to Step 2. If they are, proceed to Step 4.

2. (UNIX OS) Stop and start the daemons as explained in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*.

(Microsoft Windows) Stop and start the services by right-clicking the service you want to start or stop.

3. If the daemons/services do not stop/start properly, do a reconfiguration reboot.

4. Make sure that the TCP/IP protocol software is loaded, and that the network card and the network connection are working.

To test the TCP/IP connectivity at the command-line, type:

```
# ping {IP address of the server or the server name}
```

If you do not get a reply, there is a problem in the TCP/IP protocol services. Contact your MIS department for assistance.

5. Make sure that the correct server name and password are specified.

If the name or password is not correct, make the correction by editing the entries. See the “Administrative (User) Security Levels and Guidelines” section for your OS in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*.

The password has to be the one established through the procedure for setting up users.

- Make sure the users (`ssmon`, `ssadmin`, `ssconfig`) were set up properly.

- If you are using a naming service (NIS or NIS+ in a UNIX OS), make sure that the users have been correctly added to the naming service.

Symptom: No logical drives are listed when trying to add a logical volume from existing logical drives.

If you do not see any logical drives listed under Select a Logical Drive, the logical drives have not been unmapped and therefore are unavailable to select. You must unmap the logical drives first.

Symptom: An IP address of a server in a DHCP environment has changed.

In a DHCP environment, there is a remote possibility of a server's IP address changing if the server has been offline for longer than three days.

In these cases, the console must be notified of the new IP address of the server because the console communicates with the server through its IP address.

To remedy this situation, the server's new IP address needs to be entered into the Edit Server window of the console software.

- 1. Choose File → Server List Setup.**
- 2. Move the server name from the Managed Servers list to the Available Servers list.**
The Edit Server window is displayed. This window shows the server name and the IP address as it was configured.
- 3. Select the name of the server in the Available Servers list, and click Edit.**
The Edit Server window is displayed. This window shows the server name and the IP address as it was configured.
- 4. If the network address has changed, click Get IP Addr by Name.**
The program searches for and displays the correct IP address if you provided the name of the server as it is recorded by the service used by your network. Otherwise, you must type the IP address.
If the name used for the server is not the same as the server's network name, or if the naming service is not yet updated, you have to type the IP address manually.
- 5. Once the server IP address is entered, click OK to specify the changed address and go back to the Server List Setup window.**
- 6. Move the server name back to the Managed Servers list.**
- 7. Click OK to leave the Server List Setup window.**

Symptom: Traps are not received from a server.

To troubleshoot why a trap from a server is not received on an SNMP management workstation, such as HP OpenView, use the following steps:

1. Make sure that the SNMP service has been started on the server.

Verify that `sstrapd` is running by running the following command

```
# ps -e | grep ss
```

The output includes the name `sstrapd`; if it does not, start or stop the agent as explained in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family Software Installation Guide*.

2. Check that the proper target address of the enterprise management console and the community string is set up on the server properly.

3. Make sure that the MIB is compiled under the SNMP management console.

On a Solaris, Linux, and HP-UX OS, the `RST_OID.MIB` file is located in `/opt/SUNWsscs/ssagent`. On an IBM AIX OS, this file is located in `/usr/SUNWsscs/ssagent`. On Microsoft Windows, this file is located in `\Program Files\Sun\ssagent`. Refer to your SNMP management console documentation (such as HP OpenView) for information about how to compile the MIB.

Symptom: HP OpenView won't install or the trap daemon won't start.

If you installed HP OpenView on the same server that you set up to send SNMP traps, there are insufficient system resources for both the trap daemon and HP OpenView to run. Reconfigure system resources as explained in the following steps.

1. Add the following lines to the end of `/etc/system`:

```
set shmsys:shminfo_shmmax=0x2000000
set shmsys:shminfo_shmmin=1
set shmsys:shminfo_shmmni=256
set shmsys:shminfo_shmseg=256

set semsys:seminfo_semmap=256
set semsys:seminfo_semmni=512
set semsys:seminfo_semmns=512
set semsys:seminfo_semmsl=32
```

Note – If, due to the requirements of another application installed on your system, `/etc/system` already contains statements assigning values to any of these kernel parameters, you need to merge the parameter assignments shown in Step 1 into the file so that each parameter is only assigned once. If a previous parameter value is different than one specified in Step 1, specify the larger value.

2. Reboot the server.

Symptom: The console does not show changes when hardware is added or replaced.

If you add new equipment or if you replace a failed device, such as a disk drive, tape drive, power supply, or fan, the console does not always show updated information. At times, the tree view and the other views associated with it do not reflect the actual status of a device.

If a new device is added and you want this device to be recognized before the next periodic scan, click Rescan in the Server View window. The server immediately rescans for the inventory, and the console updates its server inventory and present the result of any changes in the tree view. To ensure a timely inventory, do a manual scan.

You might have to click Rescan more than once. When the server is in the process of a rescan and the console sends a request for the inventory, the server sends the console the server inventory at its last update, because it has not yet finished the current scan.

Symptom: Logical drive is not present on a Solaris host.

If the logical drive is not being displayed, be sure the logical drive is labeled and not excluded by Sun StorEdge Configuration Service (if installed).

Symptom: Environmental alarms are not being reported.

Storage enclosures with SCSI-based enclosure monitoring capabilities (such as SAF-TE cards) send environmental alarms to the console. The alarm state can be caused by a failure of a drive, fan, power supply, or battery, or by an abnormal temperature.

If an environmental alarm occurs, you must click Reset in the View Enclosure window to clear the alarm. You need to have configuration security privileges to click Reset in the software.

Symptom: Cannot silence the alarm.

Storage enclosures with SCSI-based enclosure monitoring capabilities (such as SAF-TE cards) send environmental alarms to the console. The alarm state can be caused by a failure of a drive, fan, power supply, or battery, or by an abnormal temperature. To silence an environmental alarm, you must push the Reset button on the right ear of the array.

An alarm can also be caused by a controller event, such as when a logical drive fails, during a rebuild, or when adding a drive. Refer to the “Event Messages” appendix in the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User’s Guide* for more information about controller events. To silence the controller, see [“To Mute the Controller Beeper” on page 201](#).

Note – Pushing the Reset button has no effect on controller event alarms and muting the beeper has no effect on failed component alarms.

Symptom: The console appears to run slowly.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service can monitor and manage up to 32 arrays at one time. However, console response time can decrease as the number of arrays being managed increases.

When the amount of memory used approaches the total available virtual memory (physical memory plus the page file size), the excessive paging likely causes problems, resulting in poor performance of all applications on that workstation.

Increase the physical memory and page file size to increase the overall virtual memory. To change the page file size, select Control Panel → System, and then choose the Performance tab in the System Properties window that is displayed.

Symptom: Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter stops working.

(UNIX OS) There are three conditions under which Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter stops working and does not report its condition. The workaround is to stop and restart it.

- If the agent fails or is stopped and restarted, Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter stops working.
- If the Config Tool is running and the daemon is stopped and restarted, a condition might occur whereby the Config Tool can no longer communicate with the daemon.

- If the agent fails or is stopped, the daemon does not detect it, stops sending email messages, and continues to show that Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter is still connected by displaying a green status.

For a Solaris host and Linux host, stop and restart Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter by typing:

```
# /etc/init.d/ssdgrptd stop
# /etc/init.d ssdgrptd start
```

For an HP-UX host, stop and restart Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter by typing:

```
# /sbin/init.d/ssdgrptd stop
# /sbin/init.d ssdgrptd start
```

For an IBM AIX host, stop and restart Sun StorEdge Diagnostic Reporter by typing:

```
# /usr/sbin/ssdgrptd start
# /usr/sbin/ssdgrptd stop
```

Symptom: (UNIX OS) The online help is not displayed.

Make sure the absolute path name of the web browser you want to use to display online help has been specified.

1. **For the Solaris, Linux, and HP-UX OS, change to** /opt/SUNWsscs/sscsconsole.
For the IBM AIX OS, change to /usr/SUNWsscs/sscsconsole.
2. **Type:**

```
./config_sscon
```

3. **Enter the absolute path name of the web browser.**

Error Codes and Messages

This appendix provides a list of error codes and status messages for Sun StorEdge Configuration Service. For a list of controller error messages, refer to the *Sun StorEdge 3000 Family RAID Firmware User's Guide*.

- [“Error Codes” on page 268](#)
- [“Error and Status Messages” on page 286](#)
- [“Installation and Program Prompts” on page 300](#)

Error Codes

Shown and described in the Event Log, an error code is an eight-character code that consists of four fields of two characters each. Some codes might be followed by a dash and another eight-character code, which is for internal use only.

The following tables describe the error codes used in each two-character field. The format of the four fields of two characters is:

d1d2d3d4-d5d6d7d8

where

d1= the Severity Field

d2= the Major Field

d3= the Minor Field (determines how *d4*, *d5*, *d6*, *d7*, and *d8* are decoded)

TABLE G-1 Severity Field

Severity Field	Description
01	Critical
02	Warning
03	Informational

TABLE G-2 Major Field

Major Field	Description
01	Unknown
05	
06	Monitor daemon
08	Server daemon
09	JBOD (Just a bunch of disks) message
0A	Communication
0B	RAID Controller

The Minor field is defined in following table. The definition of the Error Field is dependent upon the definition of the Minor Field in which case the appropriate Table is referenced.

TABLE G-3 Minor Field

Minor Field	Description
01	Unknown
02	See "Error Field: System Drive State" on page 270.
03	See "Error Field: Disk State" on page 270.
04	See "Error Field: SAF-TE State" on page 271.
05	See "Error Field: Tape State" on page 271.
06	See "Error Field: Redundancy State" on page 273.
07	See "Error Field: Internal State" on page 273.
08	See "Error Field: Device State" on page 274.
09	See "Error Field: Initialization State" on page 274.
0A	See "Error Field: Invalid Client Parameter" on page 274.
0B	See "Error Field: Open Transport" on page 275.
0C	See "Error Field: Close Transport" on page 275.
0D	See "Error Field: Memory Allocation" on page 275.
0E	RaidCard fault detected.
10	See "Error Field: Transport" on page 276.
11	See "Error Field: Main Communications" on page 276.
12	See "Error Field: Communication Link" on page 277.
13	See "Error Field: Communications Async" on page 277.
14	See "Error Field: Communications Security" on page 277.
15	See "Error Field: Timeout" on page 277.
16	See "Error Field: Administration" on page 278.
17	See "Error Field: Firmware" on page 279.
18	See "Error Field: System Shutdown" on page 279.
19	Dynamic Growth fault detected.
1C	See "Error Field: Set Config" on page 280.
1D	See "Error Field: Controller Event" on page 280.
1E	See "Error Field: Drive Side Event" on page 281.

TABLE G-3 Minor Field (*Continued*)

Minor Field	Description
1F	See “ Error Field: Host Side Event ” on page 282.
20	See “ Error Field: Logical Drive Event ” on page 282.
23	See “ Server Manage/Monitor Event Error ” on page 286.
2B	See “ Error Field: Generalized Target Event ” on page 283

Error Field: System Drive State

TABLE G-4 System Drive State Errors

Error Field	
01	Offline
02	Degraded
03	Online
04	Unknown
05	Parity Check
06	Reconstruction
07	Reconfiguration
08	Dynamic Growth
09	Nonexistent
0A	Initialization

Error Field: Disk State

TABLE G-5 Disk State Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Offline
02	Degraded
03	Online
04	Unknown
05	SMART

TABLE G-5 Disk State Errors (*Continued*)

Error Field	Description
06	Dead
07	Statechanged
08	Disklistchanged

*Error Field: SAF-TE State***TABLE G-6** SAF-TE State Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Power
02	Fan
03	Thermal
04	Alarm
05	Locked
06	Slot
07	Unknown
08	Unable to get SAF-TE information
09	Battery
0A	Invalid Number of Slots
0B	Environmental Data Not Available
0C	Incompatible revision

*Error Field: Tape State***TABLE G-7** Tape State Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Read
02	Write
03	Hard Error
04	Media Error

TABLE G-7 Tape State Errors (*Continued*)

Error Field	Description
05	Read Failure
06	Write Failure
07	Media Life
08	Not Upgradable
09	Write Protect
0A	Nonremoval
0B	Cleaning Media
0C	Unsupported Format
0D	Snapped Tape
14	Clean Now
15	Clean Periodic
16	Expired Cleaning Media
1E	Hardware A
1F	Hardware B
20	Interface
21	Eject Media
22	Down Load Fail
28	Loader Hardware A
29	Loader Tray Tape
2A	Loader Hardware B
2B	Loader Door
C8	Query Log Failed
C9	Inquire Tape Failed

Error Field: Redundancy State

TABLE G-8 Redundancy State Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Mode OK
02	No Memory for Negotiation
03	Secondary Failure
04	Secondary Removed
05	Detected Removal of Secondary
06	Detected Insertion of Secondary
07	Primary Failure
08	Primary Removed
09	Detected Removal of Primary
0A	Detected Insertion of Primary
0B	Unknown State
0C	Partner Failed
0D	Partner Inserted
0E	Partner Removed

Error Field: Internal State

TABLE G-9 Internal State Errors

Error Field	Description
01	No Memory
02	Semaphore
03	Thread
04	No Devices

Error Field: Device State

TABLE G-10 Device State Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Inquiry
02	Unknown

Error Field: Initialization State

TABLE G-11 Initialization State Errors

Error Field	Description
01	dll Initializing
02	dll Initializing Failed

Error Field: Invalid Client Parameter

TABLE G-12 Client Parameter Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Set Configuration – Configuration Miscompare
02	Set Configuration – Configuration Device Invalid
03	Set Configuration – Enquire Miscompare
04	Set Configuration – Enquire2 Miscompare
05	Incorrect Application Length
06	Command not Supported
07	Invalid Command
08	Set Configuration – General Miscompare
09	Invalid Length
0A	Invalid Card Identifier
0B	Invalid Card Name
0C	Invalid Parameter
0D	Invalid Command for Card Type

TABLE G-12 Client Parameter Errors (*Continued*)

Error Field	Description
0E	Set Configuration – Invalid Additional Parameter
0F	Set Configuration – Block Overlap
10	Set Configuration – Device Information Invalid

Error Field: Open Transport

TABLE G-13 Open Transport Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Open Transport

Error Field: Close Transport

TABLE G-14 Close Transport Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Close Transport

Error Field: Memory Allocation

TABLE G-15 Memory Allocation Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Insufficient Memory
02	Insufficient Memory for Administration Operation

Error Field: Transport

TABLE G-16 Transport Field Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Lock Fault
02	Insufficient Memory
03	Acquire Lock Fault
04	Release Lock Fault
05	Invalid Command
06	Invalid Length
07	Invalid Card Name
08	Invalid Card Identification
09	No Cards Found
0A	No Devices Found
0B	Open Fault
0C	Card Name not Found

Error Field: Main Communications

TABLE G-17 Main Communications Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Socket Fault
02	Report Fault
03	Thread Fault
04	Lock Fault
05	System Fault

Error Field: Communication Link

TABLE G-18 Communications Link

Error Field	Description
01	Socket Fault

Error Field: Communications Async

TABLE G-19 Communications Async

Error Field	Description
01	Socket Fault
02	Thread Fault
03	Cold Link Fault
04	Send Event Fault

Error Field: Communications Security

TABLE G-20 Communications Security

Error Field	Description
01	Security Violation

Error Field: Timeout

TABLE G-21 Timeout Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Configuration Update
02	Lock Timeout

Error Field: Administration

TABLE G-22 Administration Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Set Customer Name Fault
02	Set Configuration Ended
03	Initialize
04	Initialize Ended
05	Rebuild
06	Rebuild Ended
07	Parity Check
08	Parity Check Ended
09	Set SAF-TE Slot State
0A	Set SAF-TE Perform Slot
0B	Set SAF-TE Send Global
0E	Schedule Parity Check
0F	Schedule Parity Check Ended
10	Set Controller Parameters
11	Firmware Download
12	Consistency Check or Rebuild Ended
13	Controller Reset
14	Expand a Logical Drive
16	Add disk drives to a Logical Drive
18	Copy and replace a disk drive
1A	Background command finished
1B	Background command aborted
1C	Create label for the disks started (only on Solaris)
1D	Create label for the disks finished (only on Solaris)
1E	Media check
1F	Controller shutdown

Error Field: Firmware

TABLE G-23 Firmware Download Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Not a SAF-TE Device
02	Invalid Data Length
03	Download Failed
04	Check Sum Failed
06	Download OK
07	Invalid firmware file
08	Not enough memory
09	Invalid card ID
0A	Controller shutdown failed
0B	Inquiry error
0C	Invalid Product ID
0D	PostDataSet failed
0E	SendDataSection failed
0F	FreeResource error
10	Invalid module ID
11	Invalid download data length
12	Download revision failed
13	Invalid device type

Error Field: System Shutdown

TABLE G-24 System Shutdown Errors

Error Field	Description
01	System Shutdown Failed

Error Field: Set Config

TABLE G-25 Set Config Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Set Configuration Thread creation Failed
02	Get Logical Drive List Command Failed
03	Create Config Command Failed
04	Init Completion Status Command Failed
05	Get Configuration Command Failed
06	Change Volume Config Command Failed
07	Delete Logical Drive Command Failed

Error Field: Controller Event

TABLE G-26 Controller Event Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Controller Reset
02	Controller DRAM Parity Error
03	Redundant Controller Failed
04	Controller Power Supply Failed
05	Controller Fan Failed
06	Controller Temperature Alert
07	Controller UPS AC Power Loss
08	Controller Initialization Complete
09	Controller Power Supply Back Online
0A	Controller Fan Back Online
0B	Controller Temperature Normal
0C	Controller UPS AC Power Back On
0D	Controller RCC SDRAM error
0E	Controller Battery

Error Field: Drive Side Event

TABLE G-27 Drive Side Event Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Drive Channel Select Timeout
02	Drive Channel SCSI Bus Error
03	Drive Channel Unexpected Disconnect
04	Drive Channel Negotiation Error
05	Drive Channel Target Timed Out
06	Drive Channel Parity Error
07	Drive Channel Data Under Or Overrun
08	Drive Channel Undefined Error
09	Drive Channel SCSI Bus Reset Issued
0A	Drive Channel Not Ready Error
0B	Drive Channel Target HW Error
0C	Drive Channel Target Media Error
0D	Drive Channel Unexpected Unit Attention
0E	Drive Channel Unexpected Sense Data
0F	Drive Channel Block Reassign Fail
10	Drive Channel Block Reassign Success
11	Drive Channel SCSI Aborted Command
12	Drive Channel SCSI Channel Fail
13	Drive Channel Smart Fail
14	Drive Channel Scan SCSI Drive

Error Field: Host Side Event

TABLE G-28 Host Side Event Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Host Channel SCSI Bus Reset
02	Host Channel SCSI Bus Device Reset
03	Host Channel Abort Tag Message
04	Host Channel Parity Error
05	Host Channel Reselect Timeout

Error Field: Logical Drive Event

Note – Logical drive event messages often begin with the letters LG, an abbreviation for Logical Group that identifies the logical drive number to which the message applies.

TABLE G-29 Logical Drive Event Errors

Error Field	Description
01	Logical Drive SCSI Drive Fail
02	Logical Drive Initialization Fail
03	Logical Drive Rebuild Fail
04	Logical Drive Initialization Commenced
05	Logical Drive Initialization Completed
06	Logical Drive Rebuild Commenced
07	Logical Drive Rebuild Completed
08	Logical Drive parity check Failed
09	Logical Drive Expand Failed
0A	Logical Drive Add Disk Failed
0B	Logical Drive Parity Check Commenced
0C	Logical Drive Parity Check Completed
0D	Logical Drive Expand Commenced
0E	Logical Drive Expand Completed

TABLE G-29 Logical Drive Event Errors (*Continued*)

Error Field	Description
0F	Logical Drive Add Disk Commenced
10	Logical Drive Add Disk Completed
11	Logical Drive Add Disk Paused
12	Logical Drive Add Disk Continued
13	Logical Drive Clone Commenced
14	Logical Drive Clone Completed
15	Logical Drive Clone Failed
16	Logical Drive Media Check Commenced
17	Logical Drive Media Check Completed
18	Logical Drive Media Check Continued
19	Logical Drive Media Check Failed
1A	Logical Drive Bad Block Table
1B	Logical Drive Bad Block
1C	Logical Drive Media Scan Bad Block Recovery
1D	Logical Drive Media Scan bad Block Recovered
1E	Logical Drive Parity Event

*Error Field: Generalized Target Event***TABLE G-30** Generalized Target Event Errors

Error Field	Description
01	General Power Supply Failure Detected
02	DC Failure Detected
03	AC Failure Detected
04	DC Over Voltage Warning
05	DC Under Voltage Warning
06	DC Over Voltage Critical
07	DC Under Voltage Critical
08	General Power Supply State Change Critical
09	General Power Supply Failure Condition ended

TABLE G-30 Generalized Target Event Errors (*Continued*)

Error Field	Description
0A	DC Failure Condition ended
0B	AC Failure Condition ended
0C	DC Under Voltage Condition ended
0D	DC Over Voltage Condition ended
0E	Temperature General State Change
0F	General Temperature Alert
10	High Temperature Warning
11	Low Temperature Warning
12	High Temperature Critical
13	Low Temperature Critical
14	General Temperature State Change Critical
15	General Temperature Alert ended
16	High Temperature Condition ended
17	Low Temperature Condition ended
18	Temperature General State Change
19	Fan General Failure Detected
1A	Low RPM Warning
1B	High RPM Warning
1C	Low RPM Critical
1D	High RPM Critical
1E	General Fan State Change Critical
1F	General Fan Failure Condition ended
20	Low RPM condition ended
21	High RPM condition ended
22	General UPS State Change Notification
23	General UPS Failure Detected
24	AC Line Failure Detected
25	DC Line Failure Detected
26	Battery Failure Detected
27	General UPS State Change Critical

TABLE G-30 Generalized Target Event Errors (*Continued*)

Error Field	Description
28	General UPS Failure condition ended
29	AC Line Failure condition ended
2A	DC Line Failure condition ended
2B	Battery Failure condition ended
2C	General UPS State Change Notification
2D	General Voltage Alert
2E	High Voltage Warning
2F	Low Voltage Warning
30	High Voltage Critical
31	Low Voltage Critical
32	General Voltage State Change Critical
33	General Voltage Alert ended
34	High Voltage condition ended
35	Low Voltage condition ended
36	General Voltage State Change Notification
37	General Current Alert
38	High Current Warning
39	High Current Critical
3A	General Current State Change Critical
3B	General Current Alert ended
3C	High Current condition ended
3D	General Current State Change Notification
3E	Door is unlocked
3F	General Door State Change Critical
40	Door is now locked
41	General Door State Change Notification

Server Manage/Monitor Event Error

TABLE G-31 Server Manage/Monitor Event Error

Error Field	Description
01	Server to Manage/Monitor has changed.

Error and Status Messages

Most error and status messages are self-explanatory. [TABLE G-32](#) clarifies terms which are used in messages. [TABLE G-33](#) lists the Error/Status messages.

TABLE G-32 Substituted Values

Value	Description
Channel	Card channel number indicating a SCSI channel. A value of 1 indicates the first channel.
Fan	Fan number.
Enclosure	Enclosure number.
LogicalArray	Logical array number.
LogicalDrive	Logical Drive number.
Lun	LUN number.
Name	A text name.
Power	Power supply number.
Slot	Slot number.
State	State of a logical array or a device or an enclosure in text. The values are: Critical, Online, Offline, Critical Rebuild, Non Existent, Low Battery, Normal.
Target	A target or SCSI ID number.
Temperature	The temperature in centigrade.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages

Error and Status Messages

A SCSI Drive Failed (Ch:%d,Id:%d). Replace the defective drive.

A tape has been left in the autoloader by a previous hardware fault. Insert an empty magazine to clear the fault. If the fault does not clear, turn the autoloader off and then on again. If the problem persists, call the tape drive supplier helpline.

A user named `ssconfig` must be created for configuring SUNWsscs Diag Reporter.

Abort Clone SCSI Drive.

Abort Initialization.

Abort Parity Check.

Abort Rebuild.

Access denied for one or more servers. Log in as `ssconfig` user, and then try the operation again.

Access denied for one or more servers. Please log in as an `ssadmin` user and then try the operation again.

Active trap events is empty.

Add Physical drive %d:%d has started on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Add Physical drive has completed on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Add SCSI Drive into Logical Drive information.

Agent Name is empty.

An error occurred while getting data from the server.

An HBA card with this WWN already exists.

Another instance of this program is already running!

Array Admin in Progress.

At least one email address needs to be configured.

Attempted to load a cartridge type, not supported by this drive. The cartridge has been automatically ejected. Attempted to load an unsupported tape format.

Attempted to write to a write-protected cartridge. Remove the write-protection or use another tape.

Audible alarm has an unknown status

Audible alarm has been triggered.

Audible alarm has been turned off.

Background check or rebuild operation in progress.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Background initialization in progress.

Background parity check in progress.

Background rebuild operation in progress.

Battery Expiration Monitoring of (Ch:%d,Id:%d) is not available.

Cannot accept the incoming connection.

Cannot allocate memory.

Cannot bind TCP port with the opened TCP/IP communication.

Cannot connect with the incoming connection.

Cannot create a communication session for the incoming connection.

Cannot create host LUN filter; no host IDs were selected.

Cannot create standard host LUN mapping, no host IDs were selected.

Cannot find the logical drive that was just created. It may have been aborted.

Cannot get configuration from controller. The operation is canceled.

Cannot get configuration in set configuration.

Cannot listen on the opened TCP/IP communication.

Cannot lock a resource.

Cannot open TCP/IP communication.

Cannot perform IOCTL on the TCP/IP communication.

Cannot query incoming data status of the connection.

Cannot receive data from the connected client.

Cannot report status.

Cannot send data to the connected client.

Change logical drive failure.

Change logical volume failure.

Change or set local/global standby drives successful.

Changes made to Optimization will NOT take effect until all the logical drives are deleted and then the controller is RESET.

Click View to select one file.

Close transport fail at set configuration.

Collect mail canceled by user.

Communication is reestablished with controller.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Configuration information saved successfully!

Connect and Login command error

Contact Fax number format is wrong.

Contact Name is empty

Contact Phone number format is wrong.

Continue add drv on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Continue Media Check on Physical Drive %d:%d.

Controller Event, Battery %s %s. Informational message.

Controller Event, Battery %s %s. Likely battery module error or power cycle of array. If error persists, replace defective battery module.

Controller has been reset.

Controller has been shut down.

Controllers back in redundancy mode!

Controllers back in redundancy mode!

Copy & Replace has completed on Physical drive %d:%d.

Copy & Replace has started from Physical drive %d:%d to %d:%d.

Copy & Replace on Physical drive %d:%d has been aborted.

Create logical drive failure.

Create logical volume failure.

Creating Host LUN filter Entry; please wait...

Creating standard Host LUN mapping; please wait...

Customer Fax number format is wrong.

Customer Name is empty.

Customer Phone number format is wrong.

Data is at risk. Media performance of this tape is severely degraded. Copy any data you require from this tape. Do not use this tape again. Restart the operation with a different tape.

Decrypt mail canceled by user.

Delete logical drive failure.

Delete logical volume failure.

Deleted disk successfully!

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Deleting disk; please wait...

Deleting Host LUN filter Entry; please wait...

Deleting standard Host LUN mapping; please wait...

Device at [Channel:Target] has failed the self-reliability test.

Device information failed.

Disk(%d.%d) has changed from %s state to %s state.

Disk is labeled successfully.

Door lock has an unknown status.

Door locked.

Door unlocked.

Download Firmware with Boot Record.

Downloading Firmware to the devices

Downloading Firmware to the RAID Controller.

Drive SCSI Ch:%d; Id:%d Likely poorly seated or defective drive. If random drives, possible I/O module or cable failure.

Email address format is wrong.

Enclosure #Enclosure state change: Information: [x]

x is the raw data of SAFTE/SES data in hexadecimal format.

Enclosure #Enclosure, temperature threshold has changed from a *State* state to a *State* state.
Information:

Engaging firmware; a controller reset is not necessary.

Error in writing file, please try later!

Error occurred. Reset the config file.

Expand LD/LV information.

Expand logical volume successfully.

Expansion has completed on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Expansion has started on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Expansion logical drive *LogicalDrive* has been aborted.

Fan #Fan has an unknown status.

Fan #Fan is malfunctioning.

Fan #Fan is not present in the system.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Fan #*Fan* is operational.

File I/O error. Configuration could not be restored!

Firmware downloaded to SAF-TE/SES device (Ch:%d,Id:%d) failed.

Firmware downloaded to SAF-TE/SES device (Ch:%d,Id:%d) successfully.

Firmware downloaded to SCSI drive (Ch:%d,Id:%d) failed.

Firmware downloaded to SCSI drive (Ch:%d,Id:%d) successfully.

First select one Logical Drive!

First select one physical device.

First select one RAID controller.

For RAID1 Logical Drive 'Add Drive'/'Copy and Replace' function is disabled.

Forward mail canceled by user.

Generic File Mutex lock is not released.

Get logical drive list failure.

Getting Agent Options failed!

Getting Controller Parameters failed!

Getting Host LUN Assignments failed! Please try again

Getting the configuration failed!

Group Name can not be empty

Host LUN filter Entry created successfully!

Host LUN filter Entry deleted successfully!

Host LUNs modified successfully.

If file access is not properly coordinated when assigned to multiple hosts, data corruption and access contentions may occur.

If Minimum interval is \"0\" or \"*\", then Content must be \"Event\"

If the firmware download progress is interrupted the controllers/devices may become unusable.

Initialization has completed on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Initialization has started on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Initialization on logical drive *LogicalDrive* has been aborted.

Initialization operations have completed.

Initialization, rebuild, expand, or add SCSI drive activities are in progress. Try again later.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Inserted failed primary controller.

Inserted failed secondary controller.

Invalid data received.

Invalid server IP address!

IOM SES Firmware Revision Level Mismatch (LogChl:%d,Id:%d). ses version=%s/%s, pld version=%s/%s. [CHASSIS BKPLN SN#%s]

IP Address format error (must be xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx and 0 < < xxx < < 255) !

IP Address is duplicated!

IP Address is empty.

Location is empty.

Log in as \"ssconfig\" user and try the operation again.

Logical array *LogicalArray* has changed from a *state* state to a *state* state.

Logical Drive ID %d exceeds 2 TB size limitation for sequential optimized LD.

Logical Drive ID %d exceeds 512 GB size limitation for random optimized LD.

Logical Drive ID %d, Rebuild Aborted. Informational message.

Logical Drive ID *LogicalDrive* rebuild has aborted.

Logical Drive ID *LogicalDrive* rebuild has completed.

Logical Drive ID *LogicalDrive* rebuild has started.

Logical Drive *LogicalDrive* has changed from a *State* state to a *State* state.

Logical Drive *LogicalDrive* has changed from a *State* state to a *State* state.

Logical Volume Components List. Total disks in this Logical Volume=

Login successful

Login unsuccessful

Logout command error.

Mail information is empty

Media Check has completed on Physical drive %d:%d.

Media Check has started on Physical drive %d:%d.

Media Check on Physical drive %d:%d has been aborted.

Memory Allocation Error. Unable to load daemon.

Minimum interval between emails must be one of the following formats: \"*\n\" \"0\n\" \"\nn\n\" \"nn:mm\n\"

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Minimum interval can't meet Content value.

Minimum interval format error.

Minimum interval format is HH[:MM].

Minimum interval is empty.

Monitor Stopped.

Multiple IP assignment mechanisms are not supported. Select only one mechanism.

Mute beeper.

Mute controller beeper failure.

Mute controller beeper.

Mutex Lock is not released.

Mutex Lock timeouts.

Mutex Lock(s) cannot be created!

Mutex Lock(s) change state failed!

New parity check schedule has been created.

No admin progress exists.

No Admin progress was found. All activity should be complete!

No array administration activity in progress!

No more events to report.

No new controller was found; you do not need to reboot the system.

No online server, cannot delete event log.

No rebuildable drive available.

Only the last partition of a LD/LV can be deleted.

Open transport fail at set configuration.

Open transport, Lock fail, the original lock holder's IP address is %s.

Open transport, LogIn fail.

Operation completed successfully.

Operation failed.

Operation in progress.

Operation on one of the servers failed.

Out of the scope!

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Parity Check Aborted.

Parity check confirmation.

Parity check could not be started on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Parity check has completed on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Parity check has started on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Parity check on logical drive *LogicalDrive* has been aborted.

Parity check schedule has been removed.

Parity check schedule has been updated.

Partition 0 cannot be deleted.

Partition table is full. New partitions cannot be added.

Password error!

Password is empty.

Port is invalid (port must be between 0 and 65535).

Port is invalid (port must be between 1270 and 1273).

Power supply #*Power* has an unknown status.

Power supply #*Power* is malfunctioning and has been switched off.

Power supply #*Power* is malfunctioning or disabled.

Power supply #*Power* is not present in the system.

Power supply #*Power* is operational but disabled.

Power supply #*Power* is operational.

Power supply #*Power* is present in the system.

Primary controller failed!

Probe Agent command error!

Progress Not Available.

RAID Controller firmware checksum failed - corrupt firmware data.

RAID Controller firmware download has failed.

RAID Controller firmware has been updated.

RAID Controller is back online.

Read config file error.

Rebuild on logical drive *LogicalDrive* has been aborted.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Rebuild or check operations have completed.

Redundant Array State Change: Controller Failed.

Redundant Array State Change: Controllers Back in Redundancy Mode.

Removed a failed primary controller.

Removed a failed secondary controller.

Restoring configuration to the controller.

Retry the configuration operation after the update is complete.

SAF-TE/SES card *Channel:Target* firmware has been updated.

SAF-TE/SES card *Channel:Target* global status has been updated.

SAF-TE/SES card *Channel:Target* slot perform status has been updated.

SAF-TE/SES card *Channel:Target* slot status has been updated.

Save a Copy in server.

Saving configuration information; please wait...

Scan SCSI drive (%d.%d) has succeeded.

Scan SCSI Drive information.

Scheduled parity check could not be started on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Scheduled parity check has completed on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Scheduled parity check has started on logical drive *LogicalDrive*.

Scheduled parity check skipped to next schedule due to incompleteness of previous check.

Secondary controller failed!

Server Error.

Server failed the operation due to insufficient memory.

Server Name is empty.

Server Not managed!

Set controller parameter(s) successful.

Set or add configuration failed.

Slot #*Slot* has had a device *Name*.

SMTP From address format is wrong or empty.

SMTP From address format is wrong.

SMTP Server address is empty.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Specify how often you want the parity checked.

Standard Configuration options provide a group of basic default RAID sets whereby the drive size, quantity, and assignments are preconfigured.

Standard Configuration will replace the existing configuration.

Standard Host LUN mapping created successfully!

Standard Host LUN mapping deleted successfully!

Standard maps are available to all connected hosts in certain configurations.

Standby rebuild operation completed with an unknown error.

Standby rebuild operation in progress.

Startup state of the secondary controller.

State Change Mutex lock is not released.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service monitor daemon has started.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service server daemon has started.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service startup is complete.

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service trap daemon has started.

System Administrator (ssconfig) has started irrevocable System Shutdown and Restart. SAVE all data and LOG OFF IMMEDIATELY.

System ID is empty.

Tape operation has stopped because an error occurred while reading or writing data, which the drive cannot correct.

TapeAlert notification. Device [*Channel:Target*].

Target Media Error Reported (Ch:%d,Id:%d). Likely poorly seated or defective drive. Possible defective drive slot.

Temperature change from *TemperatureC* to *TemperatureC*.

The background command (s) has finished.

The background command(s) has been aborted.

The battery on (Ch:%d,Id:%d) is expired on %s. Please install a new battery. Battery Information is (%s).

The battery on (Ch:%d,Id:%d) is going to expire on %s (after %d days). Please install a new battery before the current battery expires. Battery Information is (%s).

The changer mechanism is having difficulty communicating with the tape drive. Turn the autoloader off then on and restart the operation. If the problem persists, call the tape drive supplier helpline.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

The configuration has been updated.

The configuration was successfully updated. If new LDs/LVs were created, the server may need to be rebooted.

The Controller devices list changed.

The controller parameters have been updated.

The current user is `ssconfig`; you cannot log in again.

The daemons are not responding.

The device does not belong to the same HBA card. The operations cannot continue.

The disks list changed.

The drive letter (mounted point) cannot be assigned.

The encrypt key is empty.

The firmware does not support multiple IP assignment mechanisms.

The firmware download failed because you have tried to use the incorrect firmware for this tape drive. Obtain the correct firmware and try again.

The Host LUN filter map (StorEdge SN#%d LD %d Partition %d WWN:) has been created.

The Host LUN filter map (StorEdge SN#%d LD %d Partition %d WWN:) has been deleted.

The in-service date(%s) of new battery on (Ch:%d,Id:%d) is set.

The IP Address cannot be empty.

The last cleaning cartridge used in the tape drive has worn out. Discard the worn out cleaning cartridge, wait for the current operation to finish, and then use a new cleaning cartridge.

The LD# is moved up after you delete the LD, so it may not be consistent with the LD# shown in the RS-232 terminal window.

The length of the Encrypt Key must be greater than 8 characters.

The Mail Server field cannot be empty.

The media has exceeded its specified life.

The memory allocation Failed.

The mount point (drive letter) cannot be written into file (registry).

The new battery on (Ch:%d,Id:%d) is installed. Battery information is (%s).

The number of logical drives did not increase after creating a logical drive. (before:%d now:%d).

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

The operation failed because the autoloader door is open. Clear any obstructions from the autoloader door, eject the magazine, and then insert it again. If the fault does not clear, turn the autoloader off and then on again.

The operation failed because the tape in the drive has snapped. Discard the old tape. Restart the operation with a different tape.

The Selected Device list is empty!

The server already exists!

The Server Name cannot be empty or only contain any extra spaces.

The server you selected might have already been shut down.

The set configuration failed because there is another conflicting operation.

The set configuration Failed.

The WWN must be a Hex string that is less than 16 characters.

There are no available disks to configure.

There are no LDs/LVs to manage.

There are not enough available disks to add a new LD/LV or there are no available LDs to create a LV. LDs must be unmapped and partitions must be deleted prior to being used in LVs.

There is a map to more than one Host, therefore, the \“Map to Multiple Hosts”\ property cannot be unchecked. Remove the map to multiple hosts before changing this setting.

There is a problem with the autoloader mechanism. Loader mechanism has detected a hardware fault.

There is no spare or replacement drive. Rebuild cannot continue.

This may cause data loss.

This operation can take up to one minute.

This operation might take several seconds. Please wait...

This operation will add to the existing configuration.

This operation will erase any existing configuration and data.

Unable to allocate memory for array inquiry. Unable to monitor this array.

Unable to determine local host, terminating!

Unable to eject cartridge because the tape drive is in use. Wait until the operation is complete before ejecting the cartridge.

Unable to inquire RAID controller.

Unable to inquire SAF-TE device. SAF-TE monitoring for this enclosure disabled.

TABLE G-33 Error/Status Messages (*Continued*)

Error and Status Messages

Unable to inquire tape device. This device will be removed.

Unable to issue Self-Reliability Query on device at [*Channel:Target*].

Unable to log events.

Unable to open bindings file -or- no bindings present. Check Bindings file.

Unable to open I/O transport layer

Unable to query TapeAlert log data. TapeAlert monitoring disabled for this device.

Unable to read license data.

Unable to read response from SMTP server.

Unable to send e-mail to SMTP server.

Unable to toggle the speaker on the SAF-TE/SES managed enclosure.

Unable to validate recipient at SMTP server.

Unable to write license data.

UNMAPPED LUN, NOT AVAILABLE TO HOST

Username is empty.

Wait for mutex failed.

Write config file error.

Wrong Fax number format.

Wrong Phone number format.

You must first delete the host mapping for the partitions whose index number is greater before you can change this partition.

You must first delete the host mapping for this LD/LV before you can delete it.

You must first delete the host mapping of the last partition before you can add a new partition.

You must have superuser administrator privileges to run this program. exiting...

Installation and Program Prompts

TABLE G-34 contains a list of installation and program prompts.

TABLE G-34 Installation and Program Prompts

Installation and Program Prompts

An existing configuration for this package is found. Do you want to restore it?

Are you sure you want to continue?

Are you sure you want to delete the log file?

Are you sure you want to delete the trap?

Are you sure you want to overwrite the file?

Are you sure you want to rebuild the drive?

Before starting to use `SUNWsscscsConsole`, run `/opt/SUNWsscscs/sscscsconsole/config_sscon` to input the pathname of the default Web browser to access HTML help files.

Begin downloading firmware to devices. Do you want to continue?

Cannot find the Java Runtime Environment
\$JRE_MAJOR.\$JRE_MINOR or above! `SUNWsscscs Console` needs JRE 1.2 or above to run. The Console will try to find it in `/usr/java`, `/usr/jre`, `/usr/local/java`, or `/usr/local/jre`. If you installed the JRE in a directory other than one mentioned above, make a link.

Changes made to this setting will NOT take effect until the controller is RESET. Prior to resetting the controller, the operation may not proceed normally. Do you want to RESET controller?

Click View to select one file.

Do you want to download firmware to the controller?

Do you want to download firmware with boot record to the controller?

Do you want to save the current event log file?

Do you want to set up the mail server?

Enter a Contact Name.

Enter a Customer Name.

Enter a Location.

Enter a mail address.

TABLE G-34 Installation and Program Prompts (*Continued*)

Installation and Program Prompts

Enter a System ID.

Enter a valid gateway address.

Enter a valid IP address.

Enter a valid network mask.

Enter SMTP server information.

Enter SMTP Server information.

Enter the login password.

Enter the sconfig user password to login.

Install JRE 1.2.2, 1.3, or 1.4 before installing the console.

Issue Reset to the controller?

Mapped LUNs exist! These must be deleted before creating new LDs/LVs. If you proceed, this operation overwrites the present configuration. Any existing LDs/LVs are deleted and all data is lost! If you want to keep your present configuration, use the \"Add LDs/LVs to the Current Configuration\" option. Do you want to continue?

Please select a LD/LV!

Please select CH/ID.

Please select the Channel/ID of which you want to scan.

Please specify at least one SSCS agent in command-line or in sdsgrcli.cfg.

Remove the package @PKG_NAME@ and then try to install this package.

Select a LD/LV.

Select a Product ID before downloading firmware.

Select Boot Record File.

Select Configuration File.

Select either AM or PM.

Select Firmware File.

Select only ONE LD/LV!

Select only one row to edit it.

Select only one row to remove it.

Select Server for Managing Controller.

TABLE G-34 Installation and Program Prompts (*Continued*)

Installation and Program Prompts

Select the agent before clicking Remove.

Select the agent item before clicking Edit.

Select the Channel/ID of the drive you want to scan

Select the firmware file before downloading it

Select the Logical Drive(s)

Select the server item before clicking Edit.

Select the server item before clicking Remove.

Select the Starting Day.

Specify Map Information.

SUNWsscscsConsole needs JRE 1.2.2, 1.3, or 1.4 to run. The Console will try to find it in /usr/java, /usr/jre, /usr/local/java, or /usr/local/jre. If you installed the JRE in a directory other than one mentioned above, make a link.

The client receives events only when it is running. Are you sure you want to exit?

The Content of Periodic Trap cannot be \“Event\”. Please select another one.

The controller needs to be reset for the new firmware to take effect. Do you want to reset the controller?

The encrypt key you entered includes extra space in the beginning or at the end, which can cause encryption errors. Do you want to continue?

This may cause data loss. Are you sure you want to move?

This operation overwrites the present configuration. Any existing LDs/LVs are deleted and all data is lost! If you want to keep your present configuration, use the \“Add LDs/LVs to the Current Configuration\” option. Do you want to continue?

This operation overwrites the present configuration. Any existing LDs/LVs are deleted and all data is lost! If you want to keep your present configuration, use the \“Add LDs/LVs to the Current Configuration\” option. Do you want to continue?

This operation will result in the loss of data on ALL of the modified partitions. Do you want to continue?

To find out the java version currently installed, type “java-version”

Trap information has been modified. Do you want to save it?

TABLE G-34 Installation and Program Prompts *(Continued)*

Installation and Program Prompts

You selected "Event" as the Trap Type, therefore, you must select at least one Active trap event.

You selected "My SMTP server needs authorization," therefore, you must enter a Password.

You selected "My SMTP server needs authorization," therefore, you must enter a Username.

You selected "use encrypt," therefore, you must enter an encrypt key.

Glossary

The glossary lists acronyms and defines RAID terms found throughout the documentation. It also includes definitions of the operational states for disk drives and logical drives.

- active-active controllers** A pair of components, such as storage controllers in a failure-tolerant RAID array, that share a task or set of tasks when both are functioning normally. When one component of the pair fails, the other takes the entire load. Dual active controllers are connected to the same set of devices and provide a combination of higher I/O performance and greater failure tolerance than a single controller.
- ANSI** American National Standards Institute.
- ARP** Address Resolution Protocol.
- automatic rebuild** A process in which data is automatically reconstructed after a drive failure and written to a standby (spare) drive. An automatic rebuild also occurs when a new drive is installed manually in place of a failed drive. If the rebuild process is interrupted by a reset, use the Manual Rebuild command from the firmware application to restart the rebuilding process.
- block striping** *See striping.*
- block striping with dedicated parity** (RAID 3) A technique that breaks data into logical blocks, the size of a disk block, and then stripes these blocks across several drives. One drive is dedicated to parity. In the event that a disk fails, the original data can be reconstructed using the parity information and the information on the remaining drives.
- caching** Allows data to be stored in a predesignated area of a disk or RAM (random access memory). Caching is used to speed up the operation of RAID arrays, disk drives, computers and servers, or other peripheral devices.

capacity	The total number of physical drives available for data storage in a RAID array (logical drive). For example, if the capacity is N-1 and the total number of disk drives in a logical drives is six 36-Mbyte drives, the disk space available for storage is equal to five disk drives (5 x 36-Mbyte or 180 Mbyte).
CH	Channel.
channel	Any path used for the transfer of data and control information between storage devices and a storage controller or I/O adapter. Also refers to one SCSI bus on a disk array controller. Each disk array controller provides at least one channel.
CISPR	International Special Committee on Radio Interference.
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol.
disk mirroring	<i>See</i> mirroring (RAID1).
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility.
EMU	Event monitoring unit.
Fabric	Fibre Channel network built around one or more switches.
Fabric switch	Functions as a routing engine that actively directs data transfer from source to destination and arbitrates every connection. Bandwidth per node via a Fabric switch remains constant when more nodes are added, and a node on a switch port uses a data path of up to 100 Mbyte/sec to send or receive data.
failover	A mode of operation for failure-tolerant arrays in which a component has failed and its function has been assumed by a redundant component.
fault tolerance	The capacity to cope with internal hardware problems without interrupting the array's data availability, often by using backup systems brought online when a failure is detected. Many arrays provide fault tolerance by using RAID architecture to give protection against loss of data when a single disk drive fails. Using RAID 1 (mirroring), RAID 3 or RAID 5 (striping with parity), or RAID 1+0 (mirroring and striping) techniques, the array controller can reconstruct data from a failed drive and write it to a standby or replacement drive.
fault-tolerant logical drive	A logical drive that provides protection of data in the event of a single drive failure by employing RAID 1, 1+0, 3, or 5.
FC-AL	(Fibre Channel-Arbitrated Loop) FC-AL is implemented as either a loop or a Fabric. A loop can contain up to 126 nodes, accessible through only one or two servers.
Fibre Channel	A cost-effective gigabit communications link deployed across a wide range of hardware.
Fibre Channel HBAs	Fibre channel adapters of a host computer, server, or workstation.

Fibre hubs	An Arbitrated Loop Hub is a wiring concentrator. "Arbitrated" means that all nodes communicating over this Fibre loop are sharing a 100 Mbyte/sec segment. Whenever more devices are added to a single segment, the bandwidth available to each node is further divided. A loop configuration allows different devices in the loop to be configured in a token ring style. With a Fibre hub, a Fibre loop can be rearranged in a star-like configuration because the hub itself contains port bypass circuitry that forms an internal loop. Bypass circuits can automatically reconfigure the loop once a device is removed or added without disrupting the physical connection to other devices.
FRU	field-replaceable unit.
Gbyte	(Gigabyte) 1024 Mbyte or 1,073,741,824 bytes
GBIC	(Gigabit Interface Converter) A hot-swappable input/output device that plugs into a Gigabit Ethernet port or Fibre Channel.
global spare	A spare drive that is available to all logical drives in an array. Spare drives can be part of automatic logical drive rebuild.
group	A group is a data object that enables multiple servers to be contained under a single category. Groups are similar in concept to domains, and enable you to organize servers.
HBA	Host bus adapter.
hot spare	A drive in a RAID 1 or RAID 5 configuration that contains no data and acts as a standby in case another drive fails.
hot-swappable	The ability of a field-replaceable unit (FRU) to be removed and replaced while the RAID array remains powered on and operational.
ID	Identifier number.
initialization	The process of writing a specific pattern to all data blocks on all drives in a logical drive. This process overwrites and destroys existing data on the disks and the logical drive. Initialization is required to make the entire logical drive consistent at the onset. Initialization ensures that any parity checks performed in the future are executed correctly.
JBOD	(Just a Bunch of Disks) A storage device that consist of drives with no controllers.
LAN	Local area network.
LD	Logical drive.
logical drive	A section of disk storage space that is presented to the host operating system as a single physical drive. A logical drive might be located on one or more physical drives.

LUN	(Logical Unit Number) The major and minor device numbers make up the logical unit numbering sequence for a particular device connected to a computer.
LUN mapping	The ability to change the virtual LUN as presented to the server from storage. This enables such benefits as the ability of a server to boot from the SAN without requiring of a local disk drive. Each server requires LUN 0 to boot.
LUN masking	The characteristic that enables an administrator to dynamically map an HBA to a specified LUN. This provides an individual server or multiple servers access to an individual drive or to multiple drives, and prohibits unwanted server access to the same drives.
LVD	(Low-Voltage Differential) A low-noise, low-power, and low-amplitude signaling technology that enables data communication between a supported server and storage devices. LVD signaling uses two wires to drive one signal over copper wire and requires a cable that is no longer than 25 meters (82 ft.).
management port	The 10/100BASE-T Ethernet port that is used to configure a RAID array.
Mbyte	(Megabyte) 1024 Kbyte or 1,048,576 bytes
media scan	A background process that continuously checks physical drives for bad blocks or other media errors.
mirroring (RAID 1)	Data written to one disk drive is simultaneously written to another disk drive. If one disk fails, the other disk can be used to run the array and reconstruct the failed disk. The primary advantage of disk mirroring is 100 percent data redundancy. Since the disk is mirrored, it does not matter if one of the disks fails. Both disks contain the same data at all times and either can act as the operational disk. Disk mirroring provides 100 percent redundancy but is expensive because each drive in the array is duplicated.
multiple-block striping with distributed parity	A RAID technique (RAID 5) that offers redundancy with the parity information distributed across all disks in the logical drive. Data and its parity are never stored on the same disk. In the event that a disk fails, the original data can be reconstructed using the parity information and the information on the remaining disks.
NDMP	Network Data Management Protocol.
NVRAM	(non-volatile random access memory) A memory unit equipped with a battery so that the data stays intact even after main power is switched off.
N port	A Fibre Channel port in a point-to-point or Fabric connection.
OBP	OpenBoot™ PROM (OBP). When you first start Solaris, it shows an OK prompt, which is the OBP. It is a command-line interface.

out-of-band	Refers to the connections and devices that are not in the data path.
parity check	A process whereby the integrity of the redundant data on fault-tolerant arrays (RAID 3 and 5) is checked. The parity checking procedure on a logical drive recalculates the parity of data stripes in each of the logical drive's RAID stripe sets and compares it with the stored parity. If a discrepancy is found, an error is reported and the new correct parity is substituted for the stored parity. For RAID 1 configurations, data is compared with mirrored data, but since RAID 1 does not store parity, no automatic correction is possible.
partner group	A pair of interconnected controller units. Expansion units interconnected to the pair of controller units can also be part of the partner group.
PID	Primary controller identifier number
PLA	(Programmable Logic Array) Offers flexible features for more complex designs.
PLD	(Programmable logic device) A generic term for an integrated circuit that can be programmed in a laboratory to perform complex functions.
RAID	(redundant array of independent disks) An arrangement of two or more disk drives combined into a single virtual drive to provide more disk storage space, better performance and reliability, and redundant backup of data. Various combinations of these features are described by defined RAID levels. Arrays can support RAID 0, 1, 1+0, 3, and 5.
RAID Level	Various techniques using combinations of mirroring, striping, duplexing, and parity to implement a RAID array are called RAID levels. Each technique uses a distinct algorithm to offer a mix of performance, reliability and cost.
RARP	Reverse Address Resolution Protocol.
RAS	(Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability) A variety of features and initiatives all designed to maximize equipment uptime and mean time between failures, minimize downtime and the length of time necessary to repair failures, and eliminate or decrease single points of failure in favor of redundancy.
read policy	A storage device parameter that determines whether the storage device holds data in cache before storing it to disk. The ability to hold data in cache while it is being written to disk can increase storage device speed during sequential reads.
rebuild	The process of reconstructing the data that was on a disk before it failed. Rebuilding can be done only in arrays with data redundancy, such as RAID levels 1, 1+0, 3, and 5.
rebuild priority	Enables the RAID controller to serve other I/O requests while rebuilding the logical drives. Priority ranges from low, which uses the controller's minimum resources to rebuild, to high, which uses the controller's maximum resources to complete the rebuilding process.

- SAN** (Storage Area Network) A high-speed, open-standard, scalable network of storage devices and servers providing accelerated data access.
- SCSI** (Small Computer Systems Interface) An industry standard for connecting disk and tape devices to a workstation.
- SES** An interface to SCSI Enclosure Services devices. These devices sense and monitor physical conditions within an enclosure, and enable access to the status reporting and configuration features of the enclosure (such as indicator LEDs on the enclosure).
- SID** Secondary controller identifier number.
- SMART** (Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology) The industry-standard reliability prediction indicator for both the IDE/ATA and SCSI hard disk drives. Hard disk drives with SMART offer early warning of some hard disk failures so critical data can be protected.
- SMTP** (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) A protocol for sending email messages between servers and from mail clients to mail servers. The messages can then be retrieved with an email client using either POP or IMAP.
- SNMP** (Simple Network Management Protocol) A set of protocols for managing complex networks. SNMP works by sending messages, called protocol data units (PDUs), to different parts of a network. SNMP-compliant devices, called agents, store data about themselves in Management Information Bases (MIBs) and return this data to the SNMP requesters.
- spanning** Making use of the firmware's striping capability to stripe data across two otherwise independent RAID logical drives. The two spanned logical drives are presented to the operating system as one logical drive.
- standby drive** A drive that is marked as a spare to support automatic data rebuilding after a physical drive associated with a logical drive fails. For a standby drive to take the place of another drive, it must be at least equal in size to the failed drive and all of the logical drives dependent on the failed disk must be redundant—RAID 1, 1+0, 3, and 5.
- state** The current operational status of a disk drive, a logical drive, or controller. The RAID array stores the states of drives, logical drives, and the controller in its nonvolatile memory. This information is retained across power interruptions.
- stripe size** The amount of data in kilobytes that is striped across each physical drive in a logical drive. Generally, large stripe sizes are more effective for arrays with sequential reads.
- striping** The storing of sequential blocks of incoming data on all the different physical drives in a logical drive.
- This method of writing data increases the disk array throughput because multiple drives are working simultaneously, retrieving and storing. RAID 0, 1+0, 3, and 5 and all use striping.

terminator	A part used to end a SCSI bus. Terminators prevent energy from reflecting back into a cable plant by absorbing the radio frequency signals.
UPS	Uninterruptible Power Supply.
volume	One or more drives that can be grouped into a unit for data storage.
write-back cache	A cache-writing strategy in which the array controller receives the data to be written to disk, stores it in the memory buffer, and immediately sends the host operating system a signal that the write operation is complete, without waiting until the data is actually written to the disk drive. Within a short time, the controller, when not busy, writes the data to the disk drive.
write policy	A cache-writing strategy used to control write operations. The write policy options are CIFS write-back and write-through cache.
write-through cache	A cache-writing strategy in which the array controller writes the data to the disk drive before signaling the host operating system that the process is complete. Write-through cache has lower write operation and throughput performance than write-back cache, but it is the safer strategy, with minimum risk of data loss on power failure.
WWN	(worldwide name) A globally unique, hard-coded and embedded number assigned by the manufacturer and registered under IEEE that is used to identify hardware.

Index

A

- Add Server Grouping tab, 17
- Add Server Properties parameters, 13
- Add Server window, 13
- adding
 - host LUN, 61
 - logical drive, 150
 - new devices
 - probe, 85
 - SCSI drives to logical drive, 167
 - servers, 12
- agent
 - Agent Options Management window, 24, 26, 223
 - configurable parameters, 24
 - operation, 81
 - options management, 108
 - SNMP agent, 247
- Agent Options Management command, 108
- Alarm State
 - resetting, 96
- alarms
 - silencing, 96, 201
- Array Admin Progress command, 128, 136, 138, 139
- Array Admin Progress window, 108
- Array Administration
 - Array Admin Progress command, 128, 136, 138, 139
 - menu, 139
 - viewing progress, 128
- Array Administration Controller Assignment, 21
- arrays
 - maximum number supported, 21, 75, 107

- assign controller
 - through console, 21
- Assign Server to Manage RAID Controller window, 22
- auto assign global spare drive, 192
- Auto Discovery
 - button, 14
 - options, 82
 - process, 81
- automatic rebuild, 136
- Available SCSI IDs list box, 183
- Available Servers list
 - editing, 204

B

- battery
 - expiration information, 104
 - in-service date
 - setting, 105
 - status
 - critical, 104
 - degraded, 104
- beeper
 - muting, 144, 201
- before you begin installing Sun StorEdge Configuration Service
 - procedures, 3
- browser requirements
 - managing storage through the web, 123

C

- cache
 - write-back, 185
 - write-through, 185
- Cache tab, 185
- capacity
 - calculating maximum drive expand capacity, 164
 - expanding
 - capacity of logical drive or logical volume, 164
- Change Channel Settings window, 182
- Change Controller Parameters, 179
 - Cache tab
 - Optimization, 186
- Change Host LUN Assignments, 61
- Change Settings button, 182
- Channel Mode list box, 182
- Clear button
 - configuration, 59

- cluster configuration
 - CLUSTER.TXT, 237
 - IP addresses, 237
 - Microsoft Cluster Server software, 234
 - planning, 233
 - requirements, 234
 - setup, 234
 - start Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, 234, 236
- Community String
 - checking, 253
- configuration
 - caution, 37
 - Change Host LUN Assignments window, 61
 - clear button, 59
 - clearing, 59
 - Confirm Configuration Operation window, 43
 - Custom Configuration, 44
 - Custom Configure, 44
 - Custom Configure command, 179, 202
 - Load Configuration Confirmation window, 142
 - Load Configuration window, 141
 - loading, 140
 - logging out of ssconfig, 60
 - logical drive
 - saving, 29
 - Logical Drive Partitions box, 61
 - new
 - before you use, 46
 - New Configuration, 50
 - New Configuration option, 46
 - New Configuration warning, 49
 - restoring, 140
 - Saveset Description tab, 141
 - saving, 29, 62
 - saving logical drive configuration, 62
 - Security Configuration window, 254
 - Security tab, 254
 - Select Configuration File window, 140
 - selecting RAID level, 47
 - setting traps, 254
 - Standard Configuration, 39
 - Standard Configuration window, 41
 - Standard Configure, 40
 - Use a standby drive check box, 42
 - verifying, 27
- console
 - devices not displayed, 263
 - email setup, 250

- running slowly, 264
- controller
 - assigning managing server through the console, 21
 - converting from dual to single, 147
 - event errors, 280
 - muting, 144
 - parameters
 - changing, 179
 - resetting, 143, 180
 - selecting server to manage, 21
- Controller Array Progress window, 138, 139
- Controller Assignment command, 21
- Controller Maintenance Options window, 143, 144, 145, 173, 201
- controller parameters
 - saving changes, 180
- Controller Reset check box, 181, 195
- copying
 - member drives, 168
- critical
 - device status, 77
- Custom Configuration, 44
- Custom Configuration icon, 9

D

- degraded
 - device status, 77
- deleting, 162
 - logical drive, 157
 - partition, 162
- devices
 - detailed view information, 83
 - determining status, 77
 - not appearing in console, 263
 - rebuilding, 137
- DHCP environment, 261
- Diagnostic Reporter
 - troubleshooting, 264
- Disable dynamic IP assignment, 200
- Disk Access Latency field, 191
- Disk Array tab, 189
- disk capacities, 48, 79
- Display HDD under LD check box, 10
- documentation
 - how book is organized, xx
- Drive Check Period (Sec) field, 192
- Drive I/F tab, 190

- drive rebuild, 136, 137
- drives
 - assigning global spares, 192
 - copying and replacing, 168
 - make/change standby, 202
 - Physical Drive Standby State window, 203
 - rebuilding, 138
 - scanning in new, 170

E

- editing
 - available servers, 204
- email
 - Add Server, 252
 - event message notification, 15
 - Mail Address entry box, 252
 - Mail Server Setup window, 252
 - Mailing Lists, 251
 - Mailing Lists highlighted, 251
 - Mailing Lists tab, 15
 - messages, 250
 - Severity entry box, 252
 - SMTP email messages, 245
- Enable static IP assignment, 200
- Enclosure Info tab, 89
- environmental
 - alarms not reported, 263
 - state, 95
- error codes, 268
 - administration errors, 278
 - client parameter errors, 274
 - close transport errors, 275
 - communications async errors, 277
 - communications link error, 277
 - communications security errors, 277
 - controller event errors, 280
 - device state errors, 274
 - disk state errors, 270
 - drive side event errors, 281
 - firmware download errors, 279
 - host side event errors, 282
 - initialization state errors, 274
 - internal state errors, 273
 - logical drive event errors, 282, 283
 - main communications errors, 276
 - memory allocation errors, 275
 - open transport errors, 275
 - redundancy state errors, 273

- SAF-TE state errors, 271
- server manage/monitor event error, 286
- system drive state, 270
- system shutdown errors, 279
- tape state errors, 271
- timeout errors, 277
- transport field errors, 276
- error messages, 286
- Event Log, 109
 - directory locations, 110
 - error codes, 268
 - Event Log file, 110
 - Event Log icon, 9
 - Event Log window, 110
 - eventlog.txt, 109, 110
 - Save Event Log icon, 9
 - severity levels, 113
- event messages
 - email notification, 15
 - severity levels, 16
- expanding
 - capacity of logical drive or logical volume
 - calculating maximum drive expand capacity, 164

F

- failed drive rebuild, 136
- fans
 - physical location, 98
 - status, 96
- firmware
 - upgrading
 - controller, 172
 - hard drives, 176
 - SAF-TE devices, 177
 - SES devices, 177

FRU

- definition, 107
- ID, obtaining, 107

G

- global spare drive
 - assigning, 192
 - compared to a local spare drive, 221
 - definition, 210
- grouping servers, 17
- groups
 - colors, 81

- Group Name, 12
- status, 80
- symbol colors, 80
- View Group command, 83
- View Group window, 84

H

- hard drives
 - displaying in the main window, 10
- HBA
 - dual port
 - main window, 85
- HBA device
 - adding manually, 69
- Host I/F tab, 192
- host ID
 - changing in a Fibre configuration, 183
- Host LUN
 - adding, 61
 - deleting, 62
- Host LUN Assignments box, 62
- HP OpenView, 245, 246
 - caution, 253
 - troubleshooting, 262
- HP-UX OS
 - creating logical volumes on servers, 33, 34
 - determining WWN, 241
 - event log location, 110
 - SNMP traps, 257

I

- IBM AIX OS
 - determining WWN, 242
 - SNMP traps, 258
 - updating the Object Data Manager, 206
 - writing event to log file, 111
- IBM NetView, 253
- icons
 - critical, 77
 - degraded, 77
 - determining device status, 77
 - main window, 28
 - server with satellite dish attached, 27
 - toolbar
 - Custom Configuration, 9
 - Event Log, 9
 - Save Event Log, 9

- Save Report, 9
- Server List Setup, 9
- Standard Configuration, 9
- installing
 - Sun StorEdge Configuration Service on Solaris OS
 - before you begin procedures, 3
- IP address
 - changed in DHCP environment, 261
 - for traps, 255
- IP addresses
 - cluster configuration, 237

J

- JBOD
 - discovering a drive
 - HP-UX OS, 229
 - IBM AIX OS, 229
 - Microsoft Windows OS, 228
 - Solaris OS, 227, 228
 - monitoring, 223, 233
 - single-bus configuration, 224
 - upgrading firmware on hard drives, 227

L

- label
 - automatically writing, 56
- Linux OS
 - event log location, 110
 - SNMP traps, 256
 - stopping console, 11
- loading configuration, *See* restoring logical drive configuration
- local spare drive
 - compared to a global spare drive, 220
 - definition, 210
- logging in, 19
- logging out, 19
- logical drive
 - adding, 150
 - adding SCSI drives, 167
 - creating a partition, 160
 - definition, 210
 - deleting, 157
 - deleting a partition, 162
 - drive allocation, 211
 - expanding capacity, 164
 - maximum number of drives for RAID level, 51
 - Partitions box, 61

- restoring configuration, 140
- saving configuration, 29
- View Logical Drive command, 93
- logical drive number, 158
- logical volume
 - creating, 57, 153
 - definition, 210
 - no logical drives listed, 261
- logical volumes
 - avoiding, 38
- LUN assignments
 - maximum, 60
 - maximum number, 38
- LUN filter
 - accessing LUN Filter view, 67
 - adding HBA device manually, 69
 - mapping logical drive to host, 72, 74
 - overview, 65
 - removing standard mapping, 71
- LUNs, 31
 - adding, 61
 - Change Host LUN Assignments, 60
 - deleting, 62
 - Host LUN Assignments box, 62
 - LUN detailed information, 87
- LUNs Per Host parameter, 193

M

- main window, 76
- Major field, 268
- Managed Servers list setup, 17
- Managing storage through the web, 123
- mapping partition to LUN description, 213
- Max Queued IO Count field, 193
- maximum drive expand capacity, 164
- media scan, 44, 59, 133, 155
- member drives
 - copying and replacing, 168
- menu bar
 - overview, 8, 97
- message variables, 286
- MIB, 247
- Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS), 233
- Microsoft Windows OS
 - creating partitions, 32
 - determining worldwide name, 240

- event log location, 110
- starting Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, 7
- Win32
 - using cluster configuration (SCSI only), 233

Minor field, 269

- monitoring process, 81
- mountall command, 32

- muting
 - alarm, 201
 - beeper, 201

N

- navigating, 10

- network
 - DHCP, 201
 - RAAP, 201
 - static IP, 201

- Network tab, 198

- newfs command, 32

- NTFS, 235

O

- Object Data Manager
 - updating on IBM AIX OS, 206

- online help, 79

- optimization
 - maximum capacity per logical drive
 - random, 187
 - sequential, 187
 - random I/O
 - stripe size, 42, 53, 152, 187

- out-of-band
 - storage management, 117

- Out-of-Band Agent preferred over In-Band check box, 119

P

- parameters
 - controller, 179

- parity check, 128
 - scheduling, 130
 - stopping, 130

- partition
 - creating, 160
 - deleting, 162

- partitioning, 61, 162
 - an existing logical drive, 160

- requirements, 49
- passwords, 19
- performance statistics, 145
- peripheral devices
 - checking environmental status
 - chassis, 95
 - controller, 195
- physical devices
 - Physical Drives tab, 88
 - View Physical Device window, 94
 - View Physical Drive, 94
- Physical Drive Standby State window, 203
- physical drives
 - displaying in the main window, 10
 - identifying, 89
 - scanning for bad blocks, 133
- polling
 - status change of devices, 25
- power supply
 - physical location, 98
 - status, 96
- probe, 85
- Product ID list box, 176
- prompts, 300
- purple device status icon
 - device status state, 77

R

RAID

- Enclosure Info tab window, 89
- RAID controller parameters, 90
- terminology overview, 209
- View Controller Configuration command, 87

RAID levels

- assigning to logical drive, 42
- RAID 0, 215
- RAID 1, 216
- RAID 1+0, 217
- RAID 3, 218
- RAID 5, 219
- range of disks/logical drives supported, 214

random I/O optimization

- stripe size, 42, 53, 152, 187

rebuild

- drive manually, 138
- failed drive, 136
- standby drive (automatic), 136

- Rebuild Priority, 189
- Rebuild window, 139
- rebuilding
 - drive without standby, 137
- red device status item, 77
- Redundancy tab, 194, 196
- Redundant Deassert Reset field, 195, 201
- Redundant Force Pri Fail field, 195
- Redundant Force Sec Fail field, 195
- Report icon, 9
- report option, 114, 117
- Reset button, 263
 - alarm state box, 96
- reset button
 - silencing failed component alarms, 96
 - View Enclosure window, 96
- resetting
 - controller, 143
- restoring
 - logical drive configuration, 140
- restoring a logical drive configuration, 140
- RS 232 tab, 184
- RST_OID.MIB file, 246, 262

S

- SAF-TE
 - email notification of event messages, 15
- SAF-TE/SES Polling Period (s) field, 191
- Save Configuration function, 30, 63
- Save Configuration window, 30
- save controller parameter changes, 180
- save logical drive configuration, 62
- Save Report command, 114
- Save Report File window, 114
- Saveset Description tab, 141
- saving logical drive configuration, 29
- scanning
 - drives, 89, 170
- scheduling
 - parity check, 130
- SCSI channel
 - definition, 211
- SCSI drives
 - adding to logical drive, 167

- SCSI I/O Timeout (Sec) field, 191
- SCSI Motor Spin Up field, 191
- Select Configuration File window, 30, 63
- Select Controller Progress window, 138
- Server List Setup window, 204
- server not responding, 259
- Server Setup window, 205
- servers
 - Add Server Properties, 13
 - Add Server window, 13, 205, 251
 - add to Managed Servers list, 12
 - assign to controller through console, 21
 - Available Servers list, 205, 250
 - deleting, 18
 - Edit Server window, 205, 251, 261
 - editing, 204
 - inventory, 82
 - Managed Servers list, 205, 261
 - managing, 17
 - manually deleting managing server using terminal, 24, 147
 - organize into groups, 17
 - Server List Setup command, 204
 - Server List Setup function, 237, 250
 - Server List Setup icon, 9
 - Server List Setup procedure, 12
 - Server List Setup window, 261
 - Server Login window, 20
 - Server Setup, 261
 - Server Setup window, 204, 250, 261
 - setup to send traps, 253
 - TCP/IP address for server, 14
 - View Server command, 84
 - View Server window, 85, 86
- Service Configuration window, 254
- SES
 - email notification of event messages, 15
- Set Controller Config field, 195
- Severity field, 268
- severity levels (events), 113
- silencing
 - environmental alarms, 96
- Simple Mail Transport Protocol (SMTP), 252
- SMART monitoring
 - enabling, 26
- SMTP e-mail messages, 245
- SN#, 76

SNMP

- agents and managers, 247
- how it works, 246
- identifying objects, 247
- Management Information Base, 247
- objectIdentifier of MIB variable, 249
- protocol data unit (PDU), 248
- request types, 248
- security, 248
- software model, 247
- V1, 248

SNMP traps

- messages description, 246
- setting
 - using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, 250
 - without using Sun StorEdge Configuration Service, 258
- setup, 253

Solaris OS

- event log location, 110
- LG not present, 263
- rstrapd, 262
- SNMP traps, 256
- stopping console, 11

spares

- assigning global, 192

ssmon password bypassed, 14

sstrapd daemon, 256, 257, 258

Standard Configuration, 39

Standard Configuration icon, 9

standby drive

- making/changing, 202

starting

- Sun StorEdge Configuration Service
 - Microsoft Windows OS, 7
 - Solaris, Linux, HP-UX, and IBM AIX OS, 6

status

- fans, 96
- groups, 80
- power supplies, 96
- temperature, 96

storage

- managing through the web, 123
 - browser requirements, 123

stripe size

- random optimization, 42, 53, 152, 187
- sequential optimization, 42, 53, 152, 187

Sun StorEdge 3120 SCSI array

- fan location, 226
- monitoring, 223
- power supply location, 226
- SAF-TE temperature sensor location, 226
- supported functionality, 4

Sun StorEdge Configuration Service

- agent operation, 81
- console, 76
- logging in/logging out, 19
- main window, 76
- monitoring process, 81
- overview, 1
- starting, 6
- tree view, 79

SuperFlex storage array, 235

system user password usage, 14

T

tabs

- described, 10

Tag Count Per drive field, 191

TCP/IP

- establishing connection, 81

temperature

- status, 96

toolbar icons, 8

trap daemon

- troubleshooting, 262

trap messages, 246

traps

- Card Name, 246
- Community Name box, 255
- Event Date, 246
- Event Severity, 246
- Event Time, 246
- Internet Protocol (IP), 246
- IP address format, 255
- Microsoft SNMP Properties window, 255
- not received from server, 262
- OID (object identifier), 246
- on HP-UX OS, 257
- on IBM AIX, 258
- on IBM AIX OS, 258
- on Linux, 256
- on Solaris, 256
- Server Address and Name, 246
- Service Configuration window, 255

- SNMP trap messages, 246
- Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), 246
- Trap Destinations list, 255
- trap recipient setup, 254
- Traps tab, 255
- traps setup, 253
- tree view, 79
- troubleshooting, 259
 - identifying physical drives, 89
 - See also* error codes
 - See also* error messages

U

- unmapping
 - LUNs, 62
- upgrading
 - firmware
 - controller, 172
 - hard drives, 176
 - SAF-TE devices, 177
 - SES devices, 177
- Use a standby drive check box, 42

V

- verifying configuration, 27
- View Controller Configuration, 87
- View Enclosure command, 95
- View Enclosure window, 95, 96
- View FRU, 107
- View FRU window, 107
- View HBA Card, 86
- View menu, detailed information, 83
- View Report command, 117

W

- warning
 - New Configuration, 49
- white device status item, 77
- worldwide name
 - determining on HP-UX OS, 241
 - determining on IBM AIX OS, 242
 - determining on Linux OS, 240
 - determining on Microsoft Windows OS, 240
 - determining on Solaris OS, 239
- worldwide node name
 - determining, 243

worldwide port name
determining, 244

Write a new label to the new LD check box, 56, 142

write-back cache
enabling, 185

write-through cache
enabling, 185

Y

yellow device status item, 77

